

FORD **TRANSIT** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2023

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3796en-202311-20231212105727

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Publication	19
Using This Publication	20
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication	20
Special Notices - Turkey	20

Data Privacy

Data Privacy - Diesel	23
Data Privacy - Battery Electric Vehicle	24
Service Data	25
Event Data	25
Settings Data	26
Connected Vehicle Data	26
Mobile Device Data	26
Emergency Call System Data - Diesel	27
Emergency Call System Data - Battery Electric Vehicle	27

Environment

Protecting the Environment	28

Visual Search

Interior Overview - LHD	29
Interior Overview - RHD	30
Exterior Overview	31

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions	33
Child Restraint Anchor Points	34
Child Restraints	42
Booster Seats	45
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles Without: Power Sliding Door	46
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door	46
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting	47

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions	48
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	48
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	48
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height	49
Seatbelt Reminder	49
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting	50

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	51
How Do the Side Airbags Work	51
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work	52
Airbag Precautions	52
Passenger Airbag Indicators	53
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off	53
Airbags – Troubleshooting	54

Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System	55
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting	55

Emergency Assistance

What Is Emergency Assistance	56
How Does Emergency Assistance Work	56
Emergency Call Requirements	56
Emergency Call Limitations	57

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	59
Opening and Closing the Flip Key	59
Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	59
Locating Your Vehicle	60

Table of Contents

Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition	60
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	61
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	62
Programming the Remote Control	62
Keys and Remote Controls Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition	63
Keys and Remote Controls Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	63
Keys and Remote Controls - Troubleshooting	63
Frequently Asked Questions	63

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	64
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	66
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function	67
Autounlock	68
Autolock	68
Autorelock	69
Door Lock Indicators	69
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings	69
Doors and Locks - Troubleshooting	69

Sliding Door

Sliding Door Precautions	70
Opening the Sliding Door	70
Closing the Sliding Door	71

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

Sliding Door Precautions	72
Opening the Sliding Door	72
Closing the Sliding Door	73

Stopping the Sliding Door Movement	74
Resetting the Power Sliding Door	74
Sliding Door - Troubleshooting	75

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	77
Keyless Entry Limitations	77
Keyless Entry Settings	77
Using Keyless Entry	77
Keyless Entry - Troubleshooting	78

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	79
Anti-Theft Alarm System	79
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings	80
Security - Troubleshooting	81

Power Running Boards - Vehicles With: Power Running Boards

Power Running Board Precautions	83
Power Running Board Settings	83
Deploying and Stowing the Power Running Boards	83
Power Running Boards - Troubleshooting	83

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	84
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition	84
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	85
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off	85

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	86
Autowipers - Vehicles With: Autowipers	86

Table of Contents

Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off - Vehicles With: Rear Window Wiper and Washer	87
Reverse Wipe - Vehicles With: Rear Window Wiper and Washer	87
Checking the Wiper Blades	88
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	88
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades - Vehicles With: Rear Window Wiper and Washer	88
Washers	89
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	90

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control	91
Headlamps	91
Headlamps – Troubleshooting	92
Autolamps	93
Exterior Lamps	93
Automatic High Beam Control	95
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	97

Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus	98
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus/Van	98
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	98
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus	98
Interior Lamp Function	99
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	99
Cargo Lamps - Van	99

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows	100
Window Bounce-Back	100
Opening and Closing the Sliding Windows	101

Opening and Closing the Rear Quarter Windows	101

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions	103
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror	103
Digital Interior Mirror	103

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	104
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors	104
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors	104

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview - Diesel	106
Instrument Cluster Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle	107
Tachometer - Diesel	107
Power Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle	108
Speedometer	108
Fuel Gauge - Diesel	108
Vehicle Range Display - Battery Electric Vehicle	108
High Voltage Battery Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle	109
High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle	109
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge - Diesel	109
Electric Motor Temperature Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle	109
What Is the Information Bar	110
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	110
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	110
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators	112

Table of Contents

Instrument Cluster Indicators	113

Instrument Cluster Display

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls	115
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu	115
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display	116
Fuel Economy Display - Diesel	116
Electric Economy - Battery Electric Vehicle	116
Battery Charge - Battery Electric Vehicle	117
Brake Coach - Battery Electric Vehicle	117
Trip Summary	117
Vehicle Charging Status - Battery Electric Vehicle	117

Personalized Settings

Changing the Language	118
Changing the Measurement Unit	118
Changing the Temperature Unit	118
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit	118

Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer	119
Resetting the Trip Computer	119
Trip Data	119

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

What Is Remote Start	120
Remote Start Limitations - Diesel	120
Remote Start Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle	120
Enabling Remote Start	120
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Diesel	120
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle	121

Remote Start Settings	121

Climate Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	122
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	122
Switching Defrost On and Off	122
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	122
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	122
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	123
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	123
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	123
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	123
Setting the Temperature	123
Directing the Flow of Air	124
Climate Control Hints	124

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	126
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	126
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	126
Switching Defrost On and Off	126
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Windshield	126
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield	127

Table of Contents

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	127
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off - Battery Electric Vehicle	127
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	127
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	127
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	128
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	128
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	128
Setting the Temperature	128
Directing the Flow of Air	128
Auto Mode	129
Climate Control Hints - Diesel	129
Climate Control Hints - Battery Electric Vehicle	130

Rear Passenger Climate Control

Setting the Blower Motor Speed	132
Directing the Flow of Air	132

Auxiliary Heater

What Is the Auxiliary Heater	133
Auxiliary Heater Precautions	133
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off	133
Auxiliary Heater Indicators	133

Parking Heater

What Is the Parking Heater	134
Parking Heater Precautions	134
Parking Heater Limitations	134
Parking Heater Settings	134
Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control	135

Parking Heater Remote Control Indicators	136
Changing the Parking Heater Remote Control Battery	136
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting	137

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter	138
Locating the Cabin Air Filter	138
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter	138

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	140
Sitting in the Correct Position	140
Manual Seats	141
Power Seats	144
Heated Seats	147

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Precautions	148
Manual Seats	148

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	152
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	152
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	152
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	152
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings	153
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	153
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	154

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	155
Playing Media Using the USB Port	155

Table of Contents

Charging a Device	155

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	157
Power Outlet Precautions	157
Locating the Power Outlets	157
Power Outlet Indicators	158
Switching the Rear Power Outlet On and Off	158
Setting the High Voltage Battery Reserve Limit	159
Resetting Ground Fault Detection	159
Power Outlet – Troubleshooting	160

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	162
Power Outlet Precautions	162
Power Outlet Limitations	162
Locating the Power Outlets	162
Power Outlet Indicators	162

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	164
Power Outlet Precautions	164
Locating the Power Outlets	164

Cigar Lighter

Cigar Lighter Precautions	165
Using the Cigar Lighter	165

Storage

Bottle Holders	166
Cup Holders	166
Overhead Storage	166
Front Door Storage	167
Under Seat Storage	167

Rear Overhead Storage	168

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions	169
Ignition Switch	169
Push Button Ignition Switch	170
Starting the Engine	170
Stopping the Engine	173
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	175
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	176
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting	176

Starting and Powering Off - Battery Electric Vehicle

Starting and Powering Off Precautions	180
Starting the Vehicle	180
Powering Off	180
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off	180
Vehicle Power Down Timer - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	181
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	181
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting	182

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	183
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	183
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	183
Stopping the Engine	183
Restarting the Engine	183
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	184

Table of Contents

Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning	184
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	184

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	186
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	186
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	186
Stopping the Engine	186
Restarting the Engine	186
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	187
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	187

Fuel and Refueling - 2.0L EcoBlue

Fuel and Refueling Precautions	189
Fuel Quality	190
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel	190
Running Out of Fuel	190
Refueling	192
Fuel Tank Capacity	193
Fuel Consumption Regulations	194
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings	194
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting	194

Diesel Particulate Filter

What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter	195
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work	195
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions	195
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements	196
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration	196
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	198

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System	199
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions	199
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements	199
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines	199
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank	200
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level	201
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status	202
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption	202
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification	202
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting	203

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle

What Is the High Voltage Battery	206
High Voltage Battery Precautions	206
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery	206
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery	207
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting	207

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Charging Equipment Precautions	208
Charging Equipment Overview	209
Charging Equipment Indicators	212
Locating the Charge Port - Vehicles With: Front Charge Port	215
Locating the Charge Port - Vehicles With: Rear Charge Port	216

Table of Contents

Charge Port Indicators	217
AC Charging	218
DC Charging	226
Charge Coupler Manual Release - Vehicles With: Front Charge Port	228
Charge Coupler Manual Release - Vehicles With: Rear Charge Port	229
Charging Settings	230
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging	235
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols	235
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	237

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission Precautions	239
Shifting Into Reverse	239
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators	239
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level	239
Clutch Fluid Specification	239
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting	240

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions	241
Automatic Transmission Positions	241
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission	242
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission	243
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission	243
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission	243

Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) - 10-Speed Automatic Transmission	244
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission	245
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission	245
Using Progressive Range Selection - 10-Speed Automatic Transmission	246
Manually Shifting Gears - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission	246
Temporary Neutral Mode - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission	247
Automatic Return to Park (P) - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission	248
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting	249

All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work	250
All-Wheel Drive Precautions	250
All-Wheel Drive Limitations	250
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting	250

Brakes

Brake Precautions	251
Anti-Lock Braking System	251
Brake Over Accelerator	251
Checking the Brake Fluid	251
Brakes – Troubleshooting	252

Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission, Vehicles With: Conventional Mechanical Parking Brake

Applying the Parking Brake	254

Table of Contents

Releasing the Parking Brake	254
Parking Brake Audible Warning	254
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	254

Parking Brake - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: Conventional Mechanical Parking Brake

Applying the Parking Brake	255
Releasing the Parking Brake	255
Parking Brake Audible Warning	255
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	255

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake	256
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission	256
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission	256
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	256
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	257
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	257
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	257
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	257
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	257

Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist	259
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work	259
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions	259
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off	260
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist	260
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators	260

Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting	261

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	263
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	263
Hill Start Assist Precautions	263
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting	263

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work	264
Switching Auto Hold On and Off	264
Using Auto Hold	264
Auto Hold Indicators	264

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	266
How Does Traction Control Work	266
Switching Traction Control On and Off	266
Traction Control Indicator	266
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	266

Stability Control

What Is Stability Control	267
How Does Stability Control Work	267
Switching Stability Control On and Off	267
Stability Control Indicator	267

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions	268
Switching Parking Aid On and Off	268
Rear Parking Aid	269
Front Parking Aid	269
Side Parking Aid	270
Parking Aid Indicators	272
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	272

Table of Contents

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera	274
Rear View Camera Precautions	274
Rear View Camera Limitations	274
Locating the Rear View Camera	275
Rear View Camera Guide Lines	275
Rear View Camera Settings	276

360 Degree Camera

What Is the 360 Degree Camera	277
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work	277
360 Degree Camera Precautions	277
360 Degree Camera Limitations	277
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras	277
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines	278
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off	279
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View	279

Delivery Assist

What Is Delivery Assist?	280
How Does Delivery Assist Work?	280
Delivery Assist Precautions	280
Delivery Assist Limitations	280
Switching Delivery Assist On and Off	280
Delivery Assist Settings	280
Delivery Assist Indicators	280
Delivery Assist – Troubleshooting	281

Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control	282
Switching Cruise Control On and Off	282
Setting the Cruise Control Speed	282
Canceling the Set Speed	282
Resuming the Set Speed	283
Cruise Control Indicators	283

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work	284
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work	284
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions	284
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	285
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off	287
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	287
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	287
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	288
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	289
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	289
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	290
Canceling the Set Speed	291
Resuming the Set Speed	291
Overriding the Set Speed	292
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	292
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	292
Lane Centering	292
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting	295
Predictive Speed Assist	296
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting	299

Table of Contents

Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	299

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control	301
Selecting a Drive Mode	301
Drive Modes - Diesel	301
Drive Modes - Battery Electric Vehicle	301
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting	302

Eco Coach

What Is Eco Coach	303
How Does Eco Coach Work	303
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work	303
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level	303
How Does Trip Summary Work	303
Viewing the Trip Summary	303

Efficient Drive Mode

What Is Efficient Drive Mode	304
How Does Efficient Drive Mode Work	304
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off	304
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode	304
Trip Summary	304
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators	305

Local Hazard Information

What Is Local Hazard Information	306
Local Hazard Information Precautions	306
Enabling Local Hazard Information	306
Checking Local Hazard Information Status	306

Speed Limiter

How Does the Speed Limiter Work	307

Speed Limiter Precautions	307
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off	307
Setting the Speed Limit	307
Changing the Set Speed Limit	307
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	307
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	307
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	308
Speed Limiter Indicators	308
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	308

Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter	309
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work	309
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions	309
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off	309
Setting the Speed Limit	310
Changing the Set Speed Limit	310
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	310
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	310
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	310
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators	310
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	311
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter	311
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting	311

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System	312
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	312
Lane Keeping System Precautions	312
Lane Keeping System Limitations	312

Table of Contents

Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	313
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	313
Lane Keeping System Settings	313
Aid Mode	313
Alert and Aid Mode	314
Lane Keeping System Indicators	314
Blind Spot Assist	315
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	317
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	320

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System	321
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	321
Blind Spot Information System Precautions	321
Blind Spot Information System Limitations	322
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission	322
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission	322
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	322
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System	323
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System Kit	323
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage	324
Blind Spot Information System Indicators	325
Moving Off Information System	325

Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	327

Exit Warning

What is Exit Warning	328
How Does Exit Warning Work	328
Exit Warning Precautions	328
Exit Warning Limitations	328
Exit Warning Indicators	329
Switching Exit Warning On and Off	329
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System	329
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System Kit	330
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting	330

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System	331
What Is Cross Traffic Alert - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System Kit	331
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	331
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	331
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	332
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	332
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System	332
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System Kit	333
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage	333
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	334
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	334

Table of Contents

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist	336
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	336
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control	337
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	337
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	337
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	338
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control	338
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	338
Distance Indication	339
Forward Collision Warning	340
Automatic Emergency Braking	340
Evasive Steering Assist	340
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	341

Speed Sign Recognition

What Is Speed Sign Recognition	343
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work	343
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions	343
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations	343
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators	343
Speed Sign Recognition Settings	344
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting	344

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert	345
How Does Driver Alert Work	345
Driver Alert Precautions	345
Switching Driver Alert On and Off	345

Resetting Driver Alert	345
Driver Alert Indicators	346
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	346

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition	347
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work	347
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions	347
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations	347
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators	348
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings	349
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting	349

Wrong Way Alert

What Is Wrong Way Alert	350
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work	350
Wrong Way Alert Precautions	350
Wrong Way Alert Limitations	350
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off	350
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting	351

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	352
Roof Rack	352

Rear Cargo Area

Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points	354

Connecting a Trailer

Trailer Lighting Check	355

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow

Towing a Trailer Precautions	356

Table of Contents

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

Towing a Trailer Precautions	357
Towing a Trailer Limitations	357
Loading Your Trailer	357
Trailer Towing Hints	358
Towing Weights and Dimensions	358

Trailer Sway Control

How Does Trailer Sway Control Work	363
Trailer Sway Control Precautions	363

Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions	364
Driving on Snow and Ice	364
Breaking-In	364
Driving Economically	364
Driving in Special Conditions	365
Driving Through Shallow Water - Diesel	365
Driving Through Shallow Water - Battery Electric Vehicle	366
Electric Vehicle	366
Floor Mats	367

Crash and Breakdown Information

High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Battery Electric Vehicle	369
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	370
Jump Starting the Vehicle	370
Post-Crash Alert System	375
Post-Collision Braking	375
Automatic Crash Shutoff	376
Accessing the Emergency Exit - Bus	376
Recovery Towing	376
Transporting the Vehicle	378
Fail-Safe Cooling - Diesel	379

Towing Your Vehicle - Diesel, Manual Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	381
Emergency Towing	381

Towing Your Vehicle - Diesel, Automatic Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	382

Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Emergency Towing	383

Emergency Equipment

Storing a First Aid Kit	384
Storing a Warning Triangle	384

Fuses

Fuse Precautions	385
Under Hood Fuse Box	385
Interior Fuse Box	391
Body Control Module Fuse Box	397
High Current Fuse Box	400
Identifying Fuse Types	401
Fuses – Troubleshooting	402

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions	403
Opening and Closing the Hood	403
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, AWD/ RWD/LHD	404
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, FWD/ LHD	405
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, AWD/ RWD/RHD	406
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, FWD/ RHD	407
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle	408
Engine Oil - Diesel	408

Table of Contents

Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap - Diesel	410
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel	411
Coolant - Diesel	411
Coolant - Battery Electric Vehicle	415
12V Battery	418
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Diesel	422
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Battery Electric Vehicle	423
Adjusting the Headlamps	424
Exterior Bulbs	426
Interior Bulbs	437
Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check - Diesel	440
Vehicle Care	
Cleaning the Exterior	441
Cleaning the Interior	443
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	445
Waxing Your Vehicle	445
Storing Your Vehicle	
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage	446
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage	447
Wheel and Tire Information	
Locating the Tire label	448
Information on the Tire Sidewall	448
Glossary of Tire Terminology	451
Tire Replacement Requirements	452
Using Summer Tires	453
Using Winter Tires	453
Using Snow Chains	453
Tire Care	
Checking the Tire Pressures	457
Inflating the Tires	457
Tire Pressure Specifications	457
Tire Pressure Specifications - Bus	464
Inspecting the Tire for Damage	465
Tire Rotation	465
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	467
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions	467
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	467
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components	467
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	468
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	472
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	472
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	472
Viewing the Tire Pressures	472
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System	473
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting	473
Changing a Road Wheel	
Changing a Flat Tire - Diesel	475
Changing a Flat Tire - Battery Electric Vehicle	484
Wheel Nuts	491
Capacities and Specifications	
Engine Specifications - Diesel	492
Vehicle Dimensions - Bus/Kombi/Van	493
Vehicle Dimensions - Chassis Cab/Chassis Double Cab	494

Table of Contents

Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - Diesel	496
Cooling System Capacity and Specification	496
Fuel Tank Capacity - Diesel	497
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Diesel	498
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Battery Electric Vehicle	499
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Battery Electric Vehicle	499
Washer Fluid Specification	500
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification - Diesel	500
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 6-Speed Manual Transmission – MT82	501
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 6-Speed Manual Transmission – VMT6	501
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission	502
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission	502
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 10-Speed Automatic Transmission	503
Brake Fluid Specification	503

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number	505
Vehicle Identification Plate	505

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle - Diesel	507
What Is a Connected Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle	507
Connected Vehicle Requirements	507
Connected Vehicle Limitations	507

Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	507
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	508
Connected Vehicle Settings	508
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting	508

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	510
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password	510
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting	511

Audio System

Audio System Precautions	512
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	512
Selecting the Audio Source	512
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source	512
Adjusting the Volume	512
Setting a Memory Preset	512
Muting the Audio	512
Scrolling Through Menu Items	513
Selecting a Menu Item	513
Adjusting the Sound Settings	513
Setting the Clock and Date	513
FM Radio	513
Switching the Display On and Off	514
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	514

Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions	515
Center Display Limitations	515
Status Bar	515
Information On Demand Screen	516
Rebooting the Center Display	516

Table of Contents

Voice Interaction

What is Voice Interaction	517
Setting the Wake Word	517
Beginning a Voice Interaction	517
Voice Interaction Examples	517

Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In	518
Alexa Built-In Requirements	518
Signing In to Your Account	518
Using Alexa Built-In	518
Alexa Built-In Settings	518

Phone

Phone Precautions	520
Connecting Your Phone	520
Phone Menu	520
Making and Receiving a Phone Call	522
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	523

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	524
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	524

Apps

App Precautions	525
App Requirements	525
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device	525
Enabling Apps on an Android Device	525
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	525
Switching Android Auto On and Off	526

Navigation

Accessing Navigation	527
Navigation Map Updates	527
Adjusting the Map	527
Setting a Destination	527

Waypoints	528
Route Guidance	528
Trailer Towing Navigation	528

Driver Identification

How Does Driver Identification Work	530
Signing In as a Driver	530
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting	530

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates	531
Software Update Settings	531
Software Update Indicators	532

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset	533

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Authorized Dealer Directory	534

Service Intervals - Turkey

Service Intervals	540

Customer Information

Rollover Warning	541
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment	541
Declaration of Conformity	541
REACH	541
Radio Frequency Certification Labels	542
Replacement Parts Recommendation	568
Mobile Communications Equipment	569
End User License Agreement	570
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle	595

Table of Contents

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	596

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle, print, in FordPass app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com.

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

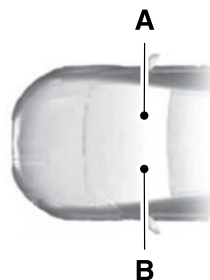
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

Illustrations

Note: Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

Introduction

Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

The online version of the Owner's Manual may contain the very latest information, which may vary slightly from the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual originally provided with your vehicle. We recommend updating the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual when prompted using Over The Air updates.

Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the FordPass app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

Note: We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit www.helminc.com or see an authorized dealer.

In Europe, visit www.z-order.de or see an authorized dealer.

For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

SPECIAL NOTICES - TURKEY

Consumer* Information

*Consumer: Real or legal person acting for commercial or non-occupational purposes. If a driver drives his vehicle for commercial or occupational purposes, whether on full-time or part-time basis, he may not be evaluated as a "Consumer" under the legislation.

In the event a vehicle is purchased subject to Consumer Warranty terms but driven for commercial or occupational purposes thereafter or if purchased subject to Commercial Warranty Terms and then driven out of commercial or occupational

Introduction

purposes, COMMERCIAL WARRANTY TERMS shall apply under general statutory provisions. This shall bind Driver and other persons who take over such vehicle. Please see Ford Warranty Terms for detailed information.

Optional rights granted to consumers pursuant to Consumer Protection Law no. 6502 and Regulation for Introductory and Owner Manuals published at the Official Gazette dated 13.06.2014 and no. 29029 and information related to authorities to which consumers may file complaints and objections are as follows:

I. Optional Rights of Consumers

1) If merchandise is understood to be defective consumer may exercise one of following rights;

a) Reneging on contract by notifying that he is ready to return sold item,

b) Retaining sold item and asking discount from sales price pro rata to defect,

c) In case excessive expense is not required, asking free of charge repair of sold item, all expenses at seller's account,

d) If possible, asking replacement of sold item with an equivalent free of defects, you can use one of these rights. Seller shall be liable to fulfill such request preferred by consumer.

2) Rights of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects may also be exercised against manufacturer or importer. Seller, manufacturer and importer shall be severally liable for fulfillment of rights set out in this clause. Manufacturer or importer shall not be held liable if they prove that defect has arisen after merchandise is placed on the market by them.

3) If free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects would bring along disproportional inconvenience for seller, consumer may exercise one of rights of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect. During determination of disproportionality, matters such as value of merchandise free of defects, importance of defect and whether resorting to other optional rights would create any problems for consumer shall be considered.

4) In the event either right of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects is chosen, such request must be fulfilled within maximum thirty business days from notification of this request to seller, manufacturer or importer. However, concerning merchandise included at the list attachment of regulation issued as per article 58 of Consumer Protection Law no. 6502, consumer's request for free of charge repair shall be fulfilled within maximum repair period set out at the regulation. Otherwise, consumer shall be free to exercise other optional rights.

5) In cases consumer chooses right of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect, full price paid or amount of discount from price shall be promptly refunded to consumer.

6) Any expenses incurred because of exercising optional rights shall be covered by the party fulfilling the right chosen by consumer. Consumer, along with one of such optional rights, may also claim compensation as per provisions of Turkish Code of Obligations dated 11/01/2011 and no. 6098.

II. Consumer Complaints and Objections

Introduction

Consumers may file applications regarding complaints and objections to consumer courts and consumer arbitration committees in accordance with arrangements provided at Consumer Protection Law no. 6502.

Manufacturer or Importer

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.S.
Akpınar Mah. Hasan Basri Cad. No: 2
34885 Sancaktepe/Istanbul
Trade Registration No: 73232 - Istanbul
Tel: 0.216 564 71 00
Fax: 0.216 564 73 85
www.fordotosan.com.tr

Service Life

The service life of this vehicle is 10 years.

DATA PRIVACY - DIESEL



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Data Privacy

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

DATA PRIVACY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: Error logs are reset following a service or repair.

Note: We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example battery charge level and tire pressure.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Data Privacy

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

Data Privacy

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages

could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 507).*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 525).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

Data Privacy

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 533).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - DIESEL

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or

verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the battery shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

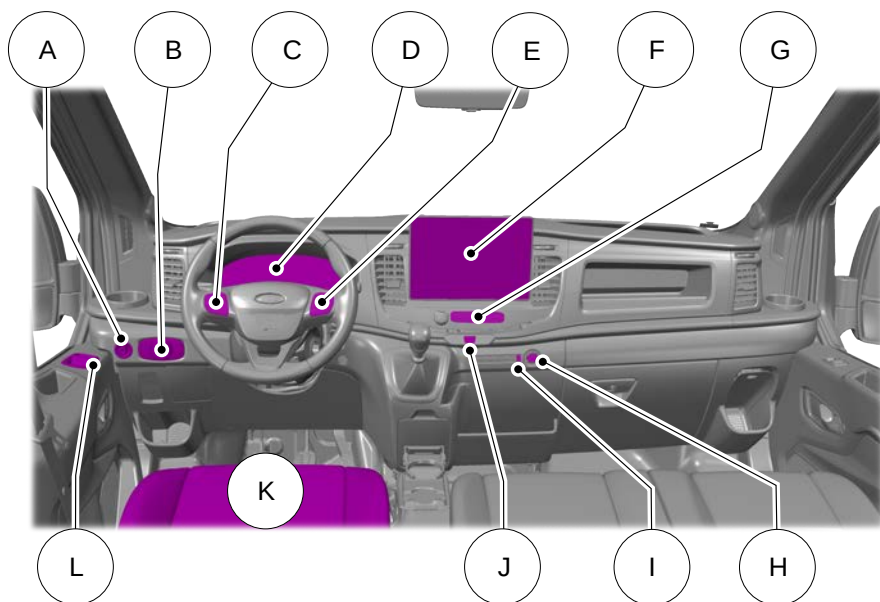
For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

France Only



Visual Search

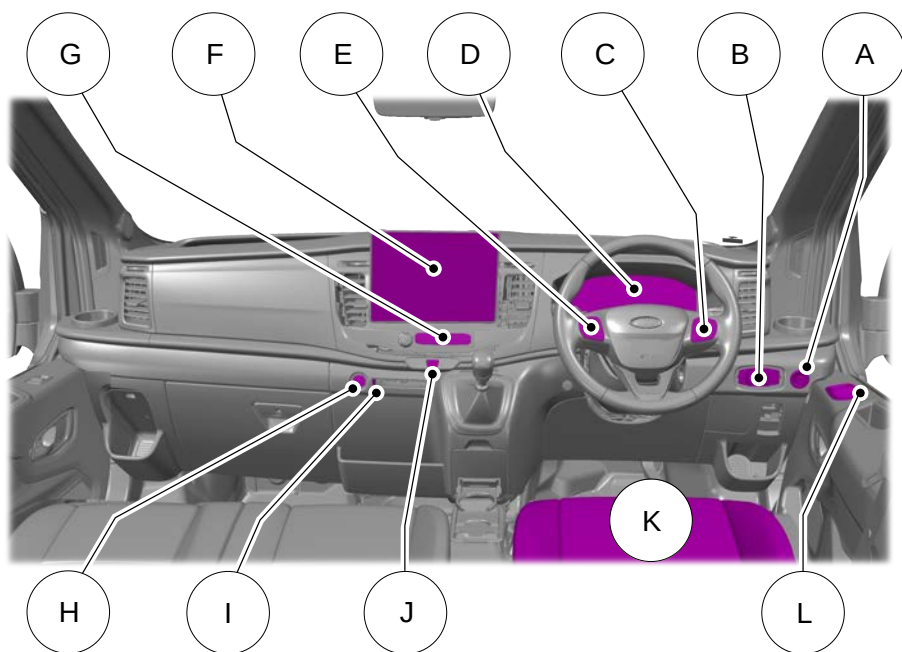
INTERIOR OVERVIEW - LHD



- A See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 104).
- B See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 91).
- C See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 287).
- D See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 106). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 107).
- E See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 115).
- F See **Center Display Precautions** (page 515).
- G See **What Is the Rear View Camera** (page 274).
- H See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 164).
- I See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 155).
- J See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 370).
- K See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 140).
- L See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 100).

Visual Search

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - RHD

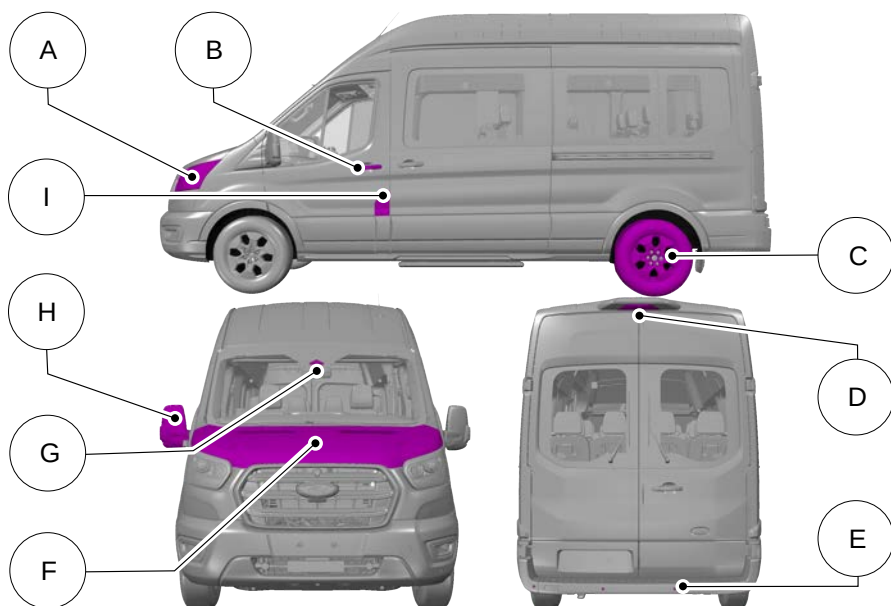


- A See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 104).
- B See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 91).
- C See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 115).
- D See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 106). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 107).
- E See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 287).
- F See **Center Display Precautions** (page 515).
- G See **What Is the Rear View Camera** (page 274).
- H See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 164).
- I See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 155).
- J See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 370).

Visual Search

- K See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 140).
- L See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 100).

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 91).
- B See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 64).
- C See **Checking the Tire Pressures** (page 457).
- D See **Rear View Camera Guide Lines** (page 275).
- E See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 268).
- F See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 403).
- G See **What Is Pre-Collision Assist** (page 336).

Visual Search

- H See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 104).
- I See **Fuel and Refueling Precautions** (page 189).

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

⚠ WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

⚠ WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

⚠ WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

⚠ WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

⚠ WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

⚠ WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

⚠ WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

⚠ WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Child Safety

WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

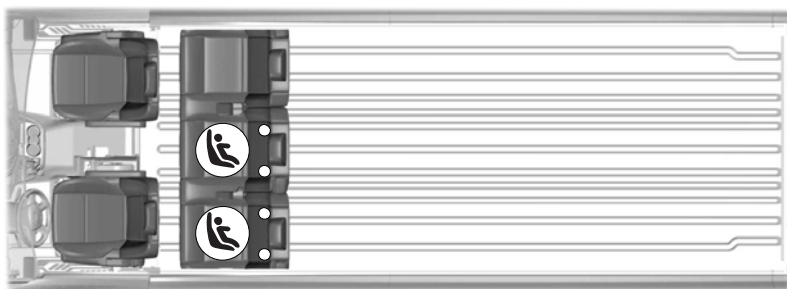
LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



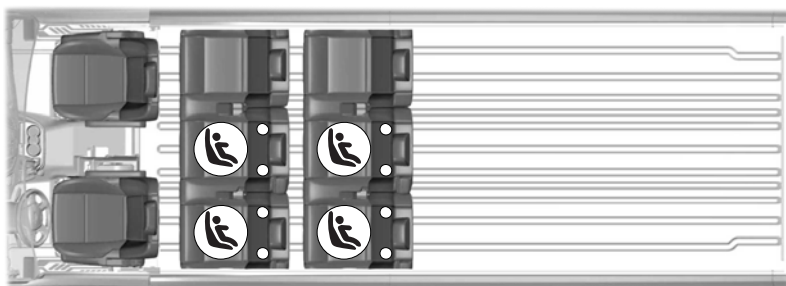
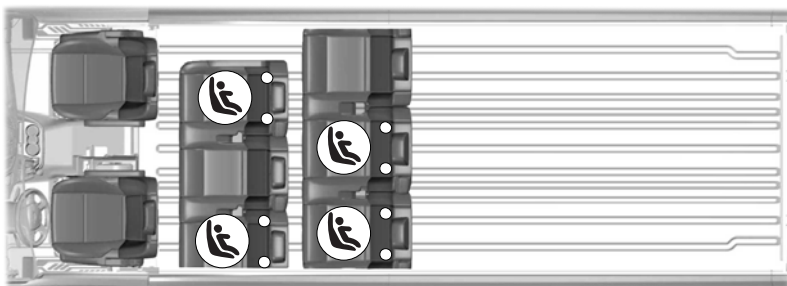
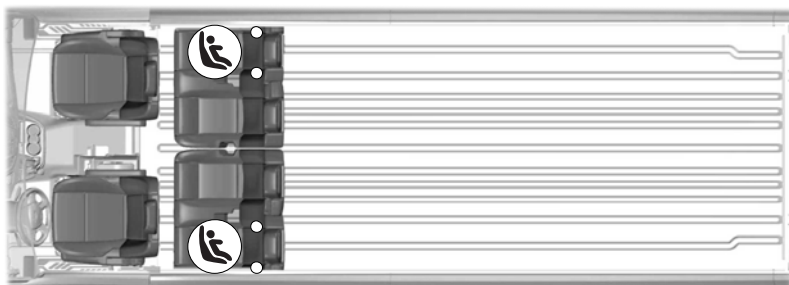
CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

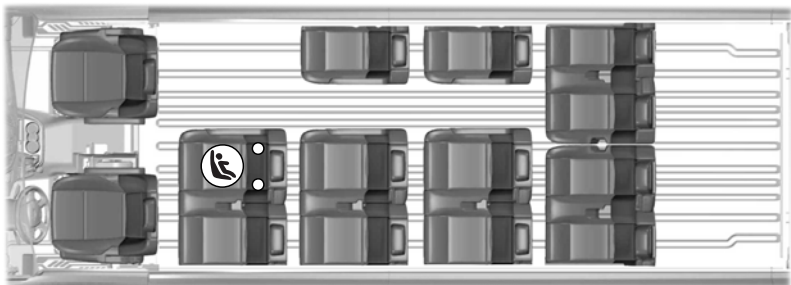
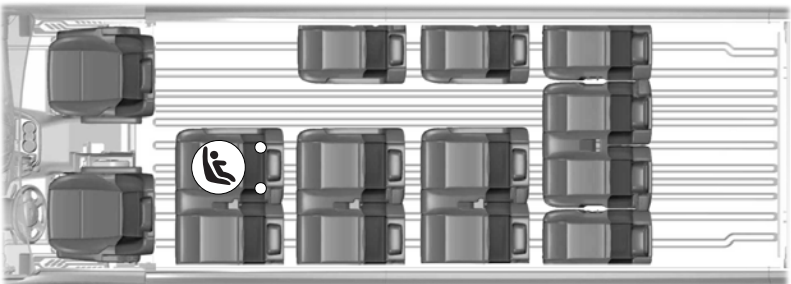
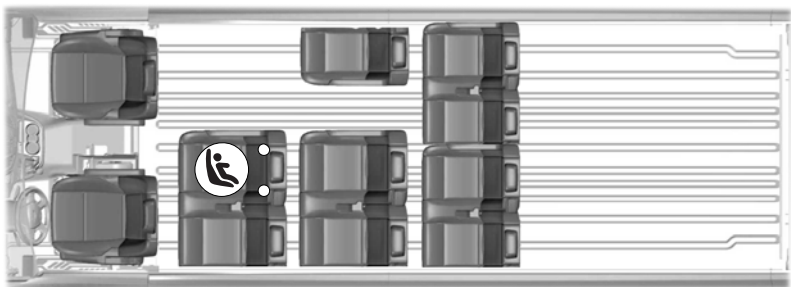
Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.



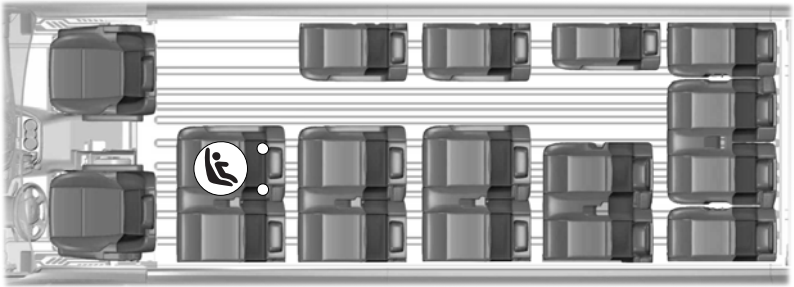
Child Safety



Child Safety



Child Safety



LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.

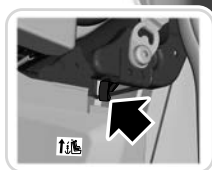
Type 1



E188718

Child Safety

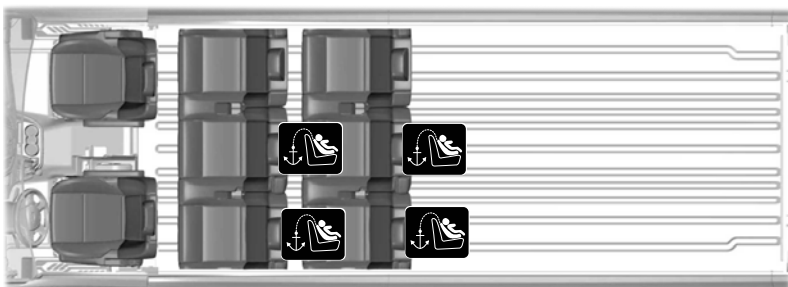
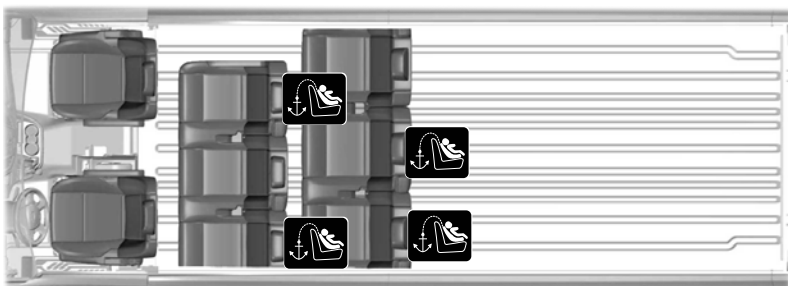
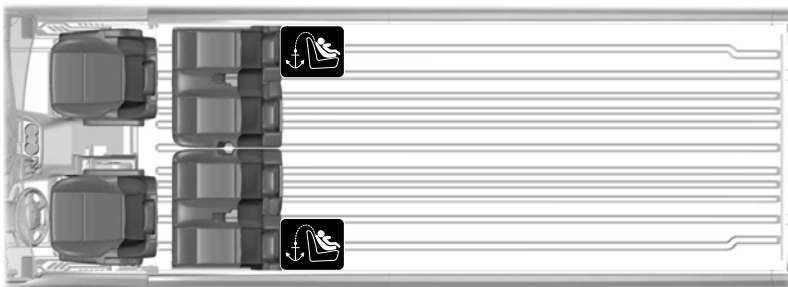
Type 2



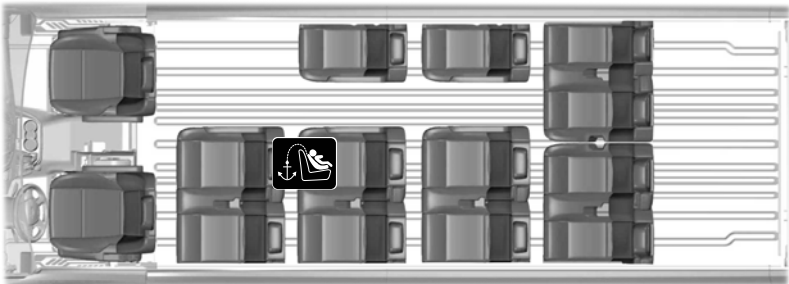
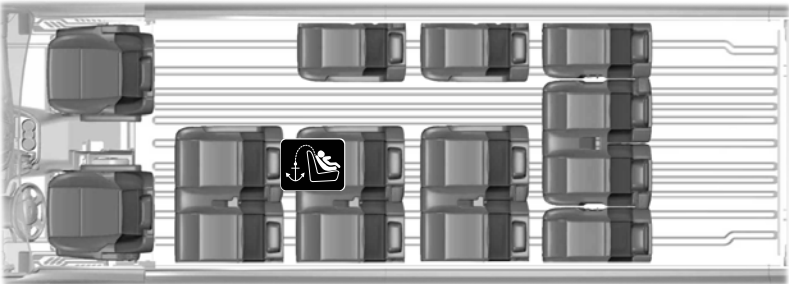
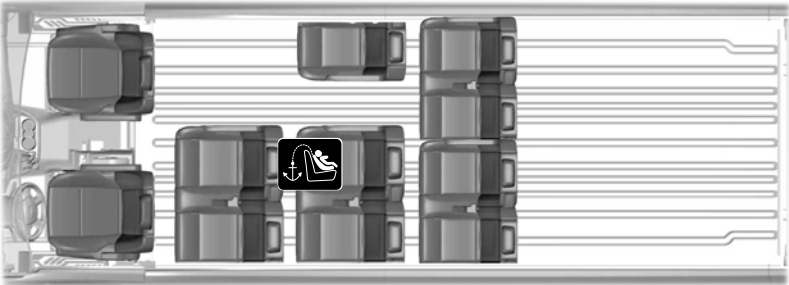
E188215



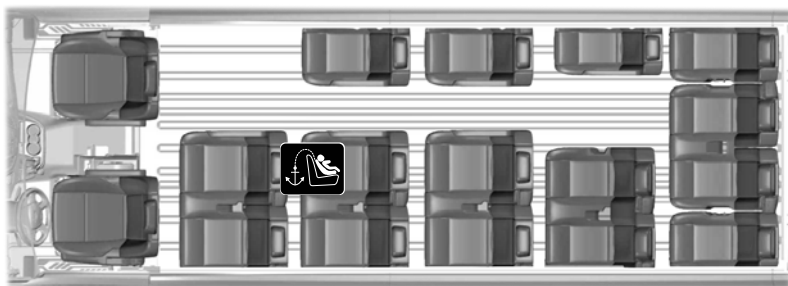
Child Safety



Child Safety



Child Safety



Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag ON	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Rear seats - second row, center position - bus	U	U	U	U	U
Rear seats - second row, center position - bus ²	X	X	X	X	X
Rear seats - second row, outboard positions and third row to sixth row - bus	L	L	L	L	L
Rear seats - second row, outboard positions and third row to sixth row - bus ²	X	X	X	X	X
Rear seats - second row - double cab in van	U	U	U	U	U
Rear seats - second row - double chassis cab	L	L	L	L	L
Rear seats - second row - kombi wide	U	U	U	U	U
Rear seats - second row - kombi narrow (window and center seat)	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹

Child Safety

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Rear seats - second row - kombi narrow (door side seat)	X	X	X	X	X
Rear seats - third row - kombi	L	L	L	L	L

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on a rear seat.

² Vehicles with non-removable head restraints.

L Suitable only for the following child restraints:

- Group 0 and 0+ Britax Baby-safe plus (E1-04301146).
- Group 1 Maxi-Cosi Priori XP (E1-04301153).
- Group 2 and 3 Britax Kid (E1-04301148).

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating positions		Mass group categories		
		0	0+	1
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
		Baby safety restraint		Child safety restraint
Rear ISOFIX - second row - bus ¹	Size type	IU	IU	IU
	Size class	E	D, E	A, B, B1, D
Rear ISOFIX - second row - double cab in van	Size type	IU	IU	IU
	Size class	E	C, D, E ²	A, B, B1, C, D
Rear ISOFIX - second row - double chassis cab	Size type	IU	IU	IU

Child Safety

Seating positions		Mass group categories		
		0	0+	1
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
		Baby safety restraint		Child safety restraint
	Size class	E	C, D, E ²	A, B, B1, C, D
Rear ISOFIX - second row - kombi	Size type	IU	IU	IU
	Size class	E	C, D, E ²	A, B, B1, C, D
Rear ISOFIX - third row - kombi	Size type	X	X	IU
	Size class			A, B, B1

¹ If your vehicle has a single passenger front row seat, C-type seats are suitable. If your vehicle has dual passenger front row seats, only D-type seats are suitable.

² No ISOFIX available if the vehicle seats have non-removable head restraints.

IU Suitable for universal category ISOFIX child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

Note: When you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations.

The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child restraints systems is defined by the capital letters A to E. These identification letters are displayed on ISOFIX child restraints.

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel. Only forward facing child restraints can be used on the center seat.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

Child Safety

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion



WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: POWER SLIDING DOOR



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door.

You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn it counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn it clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER SLIDING DOOR



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

Child Safety

The child safety lock switch is on the instrument panel.



Press the switch to switch the child safety locks on.

Note: *ON illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch them off.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Child lock malfunction See manual	Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

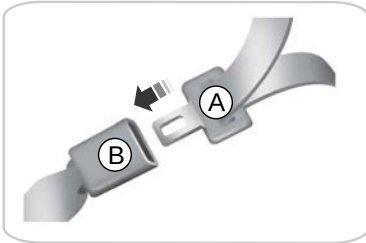


WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.

3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

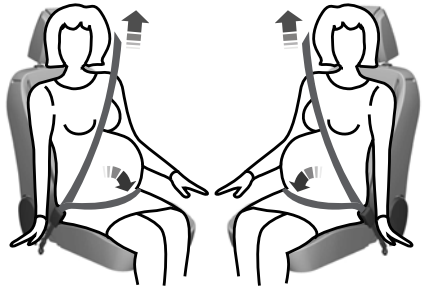
Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



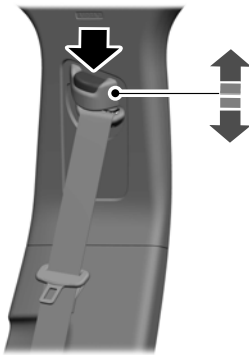
Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Seatbelts

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, this feature may not be available.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS



A

B



C

D

- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

Seatbelts

2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Information**.
4. Select **Seatbelts**.

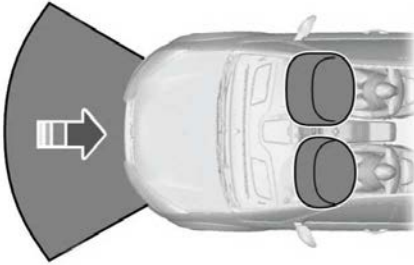
SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

Airbags



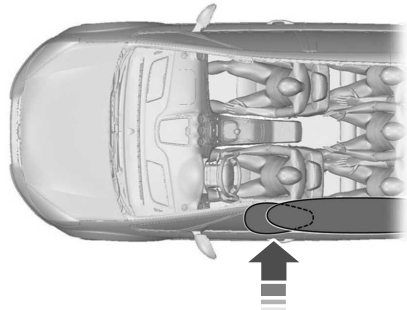
The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Airbags



WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

The passenger airbag indicator shows if the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled or disabled.

Note: When your vehicle is on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



It illuminates when the airbag is on.



It illuminates when the airbag is off.



SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF

Switching the Passenger Airbag Off



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **Off**.

Airbags

5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

Switching the Passenger Airbag On



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **On**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

Pedestrian Alert System

WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Electric drive vehicles can be extremely

quiet. The pedestrian alert system is designed to generate a sound to alert pedestrians to the presence of an electric drive vehicle.

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Action
Pedestrian sounder malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Emergency Assistance

WHAT IS EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

Emergency Assistance is a system that automatically uses your paired phone to call the emergency services in the event of a severe accident.

HOW DOES EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, your vehicle can contact emergency services by dialing the emergency number through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone.

To switch Emergency Assistance on and off please view the settings information.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice.

Note: *If any user sets Emergency Assistance to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If Emergency Assistance is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone, SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time, about 10 seconds, to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial Emergency.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call Emergency, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the Emergency operator, and then the occupant in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all Emergency systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



WARNING: Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



WARNING: For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.

Emergency Assistance



WARNING: Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.



WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

Emergency Assistance works correctly when all of the following occur:

- SYNC works properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The Emergency Assistance feature is set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle has battery power and is in a territory where Emergency Assistance is supported.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country where Emergency Assistance cannot call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *This feature only works in a country where Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.*

Note: *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following countries:

- Albania.
- Armenia.
- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.
- Bosnia and Herzegovina.
- Georgia.
- Macedonia.
- Moldova.
- Netherlands.

Emergency Assistance

- Russia.
- Ukraine.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE FLIP KEY



Press the button to release the key. Press and hold the button to fold the key back when not in use.

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Keys and Remote Controls

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



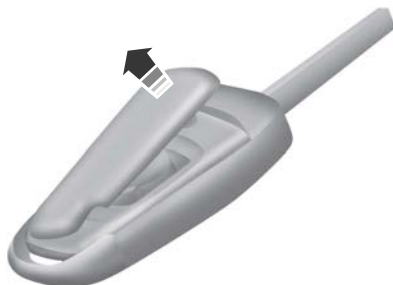
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

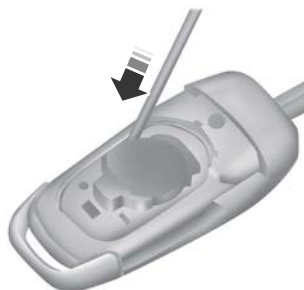
1. Press the key release button.



2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
3. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



4. Carefully remove the cover.



Keys and Remote Controls

5. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.



6. Remove the battery.
7. Install a new battery with the + facing up.
8. Replace the battery cover.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



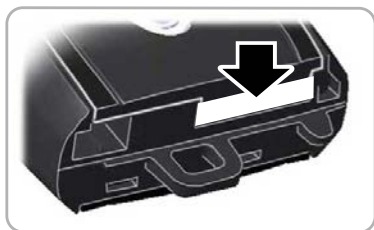
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

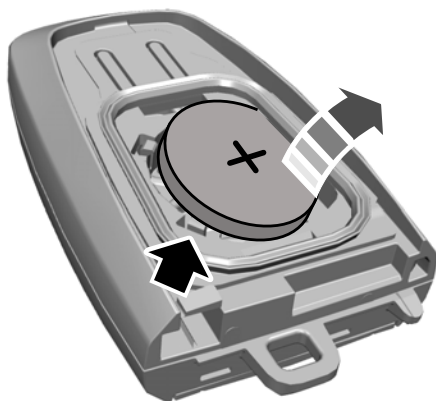


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Keys and Remote Controls



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing up.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

Keys and Remote Controls

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS AUDIBLE WARNINGS - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Sounds when you open the driver's door, turn off the vehicle and you have left the key in the ignition.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS AUDIBLE WARNINGS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Key In Reminder

Sounds when the following conditions are met:

- Vehicle is out of park (P).
- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver's door.
- You have left the key inside the vehicle.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Question	Answer
What is the fan noise I hear when I press the unlock button on the remote control?	This is the blower motor pushing fresh air into the cabin and out through cabin exhaust vents. Your vehicle has air purge that could turn on when you press the unlock button on the remote control or when certain conditions are met.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamp confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See **Keyless Entry** (page 77).

Double Locking the Doors



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

Note: If you double lock your vehicle while inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.



Press the button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash three times.

Note: You can double lock your vehicle with the key. Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

Two-Stage Configurable Unlocking Options

A configurable unlocking option is set at the time of the vehicle purchase. This determines which doors unlock when you press the unlock button or the cargo release button on the remote control once or twice.

Note: If you want to change your current unlocking configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

Option 1

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the front row doors. Double press of the unlock button unlocks all doors.

Single or double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

Option 2

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the front and the second row doors. Double press of the unlock button unlocks all doors.

Single press of the cargo release button unlocks the rear doors. Double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

Option 3

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the driver door. Double press of the unlock button unlocks all doors.

Single press of the cargo release button unlocks the rear doors. Double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

Doors and Locks

Option 4

Single press of the unlock button unlocks the driver door. Double press of the unlock button unlocks the front row doors.

Single press of the cargo release button unlocks the rear doors. Double press of the cargo release button unlocks the second row doors and the rear doors.

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Unlocking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Locking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

What Are TVL Mechanical Locks

Optional mechanical locking system that provides additional security to passenger and cargo doors. For more information, see the TVL website.

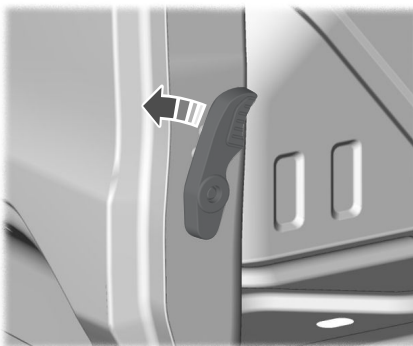
Note: Do not engage the TVL locks when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle, excluding the relock. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside when the TVL locks are engaged.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS

Opening the Double Rear Doors



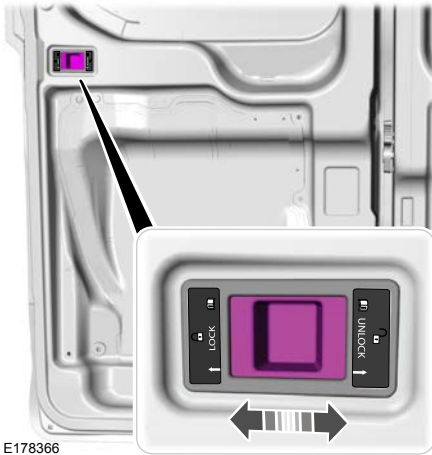
E148805



E148806

Doors and Locks

Fully Opening the Double Rear Doors



E178366

1. Slide the switch to release the catch.
2. Fully open the cargo door.

Note: If you open the rear doors the rear lights might be covered. Make sure the vehicle is visible from the rear in compliance with local regulations, for example use a warning triangle if necessary.

Central position

You can open the rear door up to 90° when the switch is in the central position.

Lock position



Open the door at 90°, slide the switch to the lock position to stop the door from closing accidentally. Slide the switch back to the central position to close the door, or to the unlock position to fully open it.

Unlock position

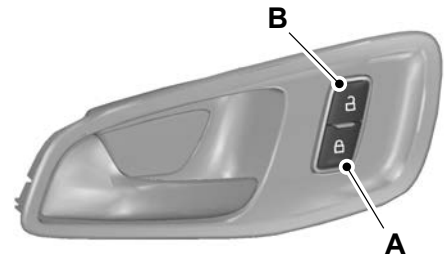


Open the door at 90°, slide and hold the switch at the unlock position to fully open the rear door.

Note: Do not place heavy items against the door when the door is open, to avoid causing damage to the hinges or lock system.

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING



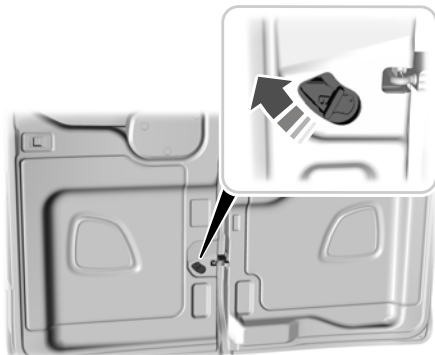
E148829

- A Lock
- B Unlock

You can see the door lock status in the instrument panel. The lamp will illuminate when you lock your vehicle.

Doors and Locks

OPENING THE REAR DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE IN AN EMERGENCY

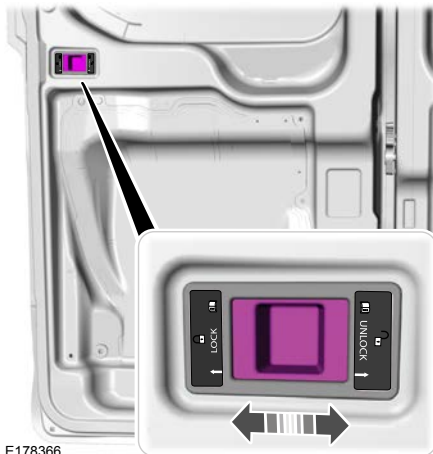


E171968

Pull the interior handle up to open the door in an emergency.

OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Double Rear Door



E178366

Slide the lever to release the catch and open the double rear doors fully.

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door, or cabin door unlocks.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Doors and Locks

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door, or cabin door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door, or cabin door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door or cabin door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door, or cabin door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.
- If you unlock any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

Note: Depending on the locking mechanism, you can program the unlocking function to unlock the driver door or the cabin doors.

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Select **Unlocking**.
5. Select **All doors** or **Driver's door**.

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

Note: Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Unlock** on or off.

AUTOLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that locks the vehicle doors when you start driving.

AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and the ignition is on.
2. Your vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).

Autolock repeats if:

1. Your vehicle is stopped.
2. Any door is opened and closed again.
3. Your vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).

Doors and Locks

SWITCHING AUTOLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Lock** on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The doors lock and the alarm return to its previous state.

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Fully close the sliding door before driving, to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



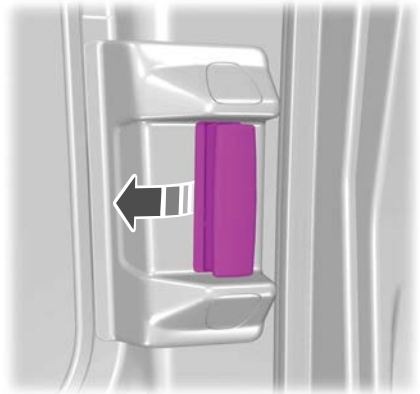
WARNING: Do not open or close the sliding door when your hands are near the tracks or rollers. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: When opening the sliding door make sure you fully open it until you hear a click. This way the door stop engage can protect you from accidentally closing.

Note: Do not leave the sliding door open when you are driving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

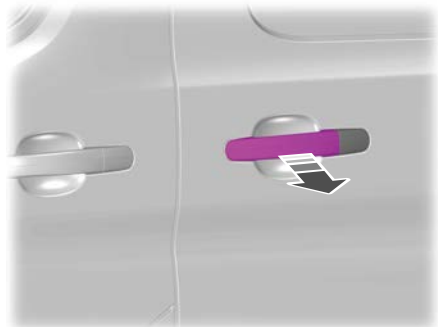
OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull the interior door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

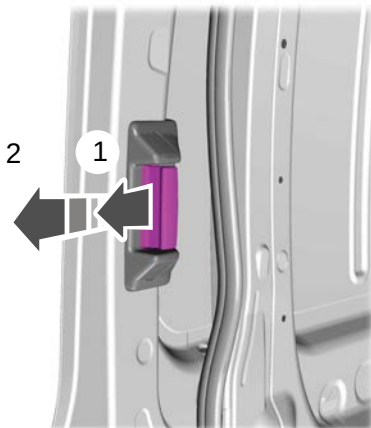


Sliding Door

Pull the exterior door handle to open the sliding door.

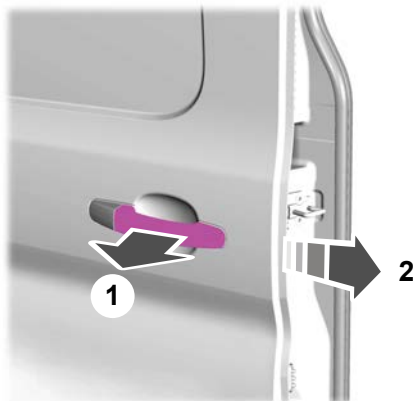
CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Pull the interior door handle to release the door check feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Pull the exterior door handle to release the door check feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Fully close the power sliding door before driving, to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not open or close the power sliding door when your hands are near the tracks or rollers. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: When closing the power sliding door, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that people and pets are not in the proximity of the sliding door opening.

Note: Do not leave the sliding door open when you are driving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

Note: If you operate the sliding door often during a short period of time, the system could become not available for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.

Allow the system to open the sliding door. Do not manually push or pull the sliding door when it is moving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR

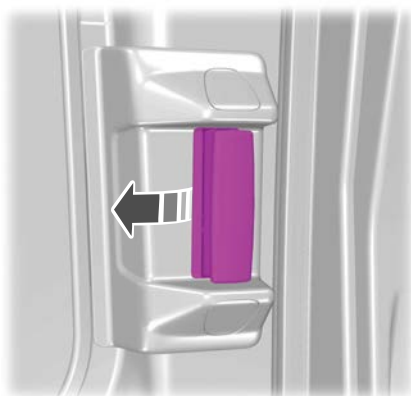
OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Instrument Panel Button



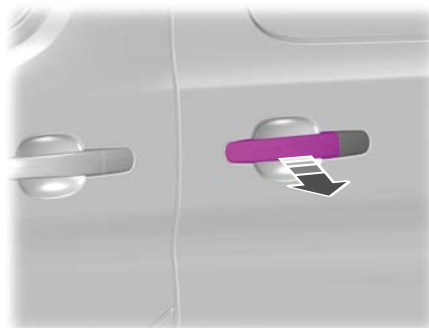
Press the button on the instrument panel to open the sliding door.

Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Sliding Door Handle



Pull and release the door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

Pull and release the exterior door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR

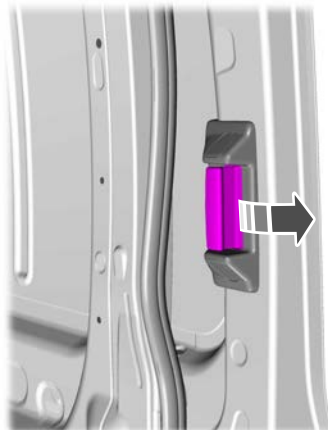
CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Instrument Panel Button



Press the button on the instrument panel to close the sliding door. A tone sounds when the sliding door begins to close.

Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Sliding Door Handle



Pull and release the interior sliding door handle to close the sliding door.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull and release the exterior door handle to close the sliding door.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the sliding door begins to close.

STOPPING THE SLIDING DOOR MOVEMENT

You can stop the sliding door movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the sliding door button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Pressing the sliding door button on the instrument panel.
- Pulling the sliding door interior or exterior door handle.

RESETTING THE POWER SLIDING DOOR

Make sure that you complete the procedure within 10 seconds.

To reset the power sliding door do the following:

1. Manually close the sliding door.

Note: Make sure that the sliding door is fully closed.

2. Pull the interior door handle in closing direction three times within three seconds.

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

SLIDING DOOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right power sliding door Calibration needed	The system has malfunctioned. Manually close the power sliding door. Pull and release the power sliding door handle to open the power sliding door. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Left Power Sliding Door Calibration Needed	
Right rear door motor disconnected See manual	The system has malfunctioned. Reset the power sliding door. See Resetting the Power Sliding Door (page 74). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Left rear door motor disconnected See manual	

Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the power sliding door stop moving?

The power sliding door stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the power sliding door starts moving in the opposite direction. After you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the power sliding door.

Why is the power sliding door moving with reduced speed?

You left the power sliding door open for more than five minutes. Fully close the power sliding door using the button on the instrument panel or the power sliding door handles. Open the power sliding door as normal.

Why can I not close the power sliding door?

If the power sliding door does not close, restart the engine and then close it as normal. See **Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle** (page 73). If the power sliding door still does not close, manually close the power sliding door and then open it as normal. If the power sliding door still does not close the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

What can I do if the power sliding door does not operate as normal?

If there is a malfunction on the power sliding door, restart the engine.

How can I open the sliding door if the system loses power?

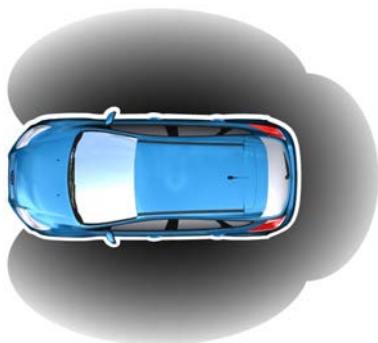
If the sliding door loses power, you could need to apply more force when trying to open it. Push the back of the sliding door and the interior sliding door handle in opening direction at the same time and open it as normal.

Keyless Entry

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS



E78276

A valid passive key must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1.5 m (5 ft) from the front door handles and rear doors.

The system could not function if:

- The passive key remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

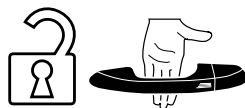
Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over you can lock the doors again, if the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.

Keyless Entry



Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash.

Press the sensor twice in 3 seconds to double lock your vehicle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.*

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, if the key is within the respective detection range.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 77). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

- The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Security

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

DISARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Security

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM (If Equipped)

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, full guard and reduced guard.

After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Full guard	Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.
Reduced guard	

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *The alarm security level will switch back to full guard once the power is turned on.*

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Alarm system**.
4. Select **Alarm settings**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

Security

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Alarm system**.
4. Select **Ask on exit**.
5. Switch **Ask on exit** on or off.

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm system	

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Power Running Boards - Vehicles With: Power Running Boards

POWER RUNNING BOARD PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: In extreme climates, excessive ice buildup may occur, causing the running boards not to deploy. Make sure that the running boards have deployed, and have finished moving before attempting to step on them. The running boards will resume normal function once the blockage is cleared.



WARNING: Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.

Do not use the running boards, front and rear hinge assemblies, running board motors, or the running board underbody mounts to lift your vehicle when jacking. Use proper jacking points.

The running boards could move slower in cold temperatures.

POWER RUNNING BOARD SETTINGS

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Power step**.
4. Select a setting.

Power Running Board Settings

Off

The power running boards remain stowed, regardless of door position.

Auto

The power running boards deploy when you open the door and stow when you close the door.

Out

The power running boards remain deployed, regardless of door position.

DEPLOYING AND STOWING THE POWER RUNNING BOARDS

The power running boards deploy when you open the door and stow when you close the door.

Note: *The power running boards reverse direction and move to the end of travel if they encounter an object when moving.*

POWER RUNNING BOARDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

POWER RUNNING BOARDS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there unwanted noise coming from my power running boards?

- The power running board mechanism could trap debris such as mud, dirt, snow, ice and salt. If this happens, set the running boards to the deployed position. Wash the system, in particular the front and rear hinge arms, with a high-pressure car wash wand.

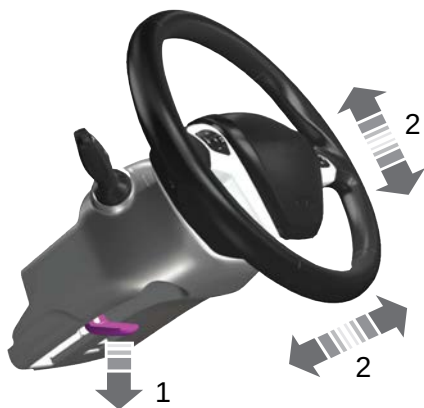
Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 140).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

Steering Wheel

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: *The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen near the climate controls. The button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

Note: *The vehicle must be running to use the heated steering wheel.*

Note: *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

Note: *It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time you switched your vehicle off.*

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

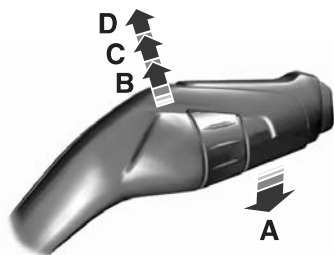
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 88). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 88).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipers may decrease.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.

- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

AUTOWIPERS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

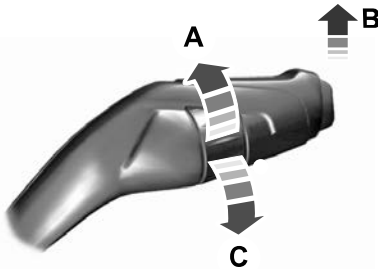
AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. In this case if you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

Wipers and Washers

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



E197526

- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers.

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER



- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

Note: Make sure that you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.

REVERSE WIPE - VEHICLES WITH: REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

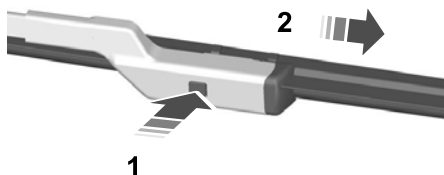
Wipers and Washers

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES



1. Lift the wiper arm. Press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

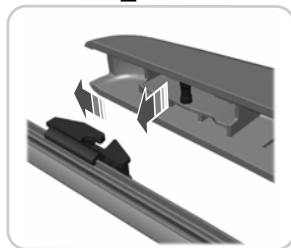
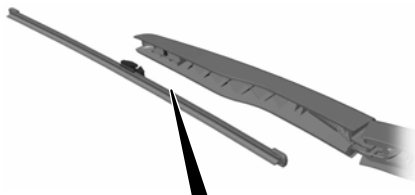
2. Remove the wiper blade

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES - VEHICLES WITH: REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER



1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Wipers and Washers

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 5°C (41°F), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 89).

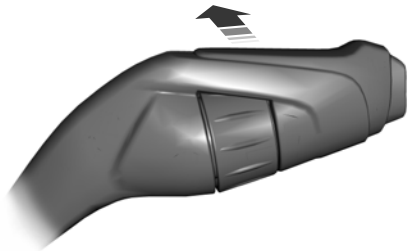
SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. When you switch it off the wipers finish the current washer request.

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER - VEHICLES WITH: REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
3. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 500).
4. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

Note: The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

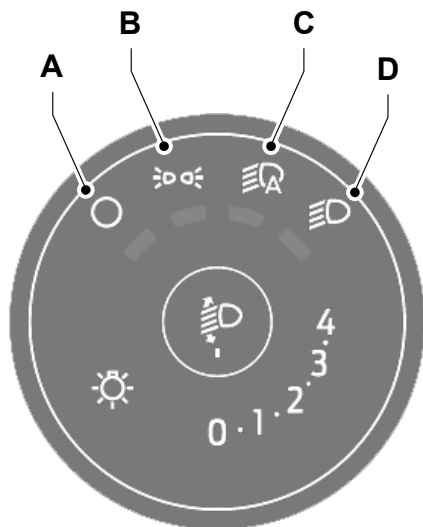
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 88). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 88).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL

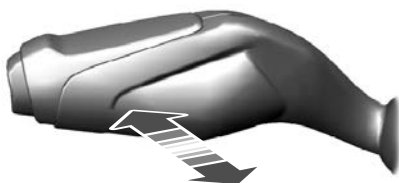


- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps on.
- C Autolamps on. See **What Are Autolamps** (page 93).
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

Exterior Lighting

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS

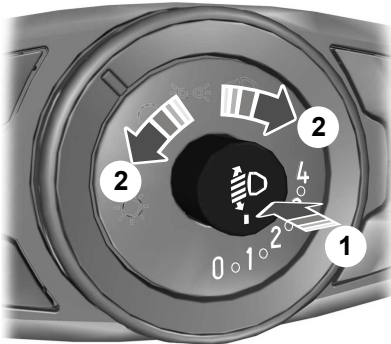


WARNING: Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.



WARNING: The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.
3. Press to close the control.

Note: Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

Note: Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Exterior Lighting

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.

3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Headlamp Delay**.
5. Select a setting.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

To switch both sides on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.

Exterior Lighting

3. Set the lighting control to the off position to switch the parking lamps off.

Note: *Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

To switch one side on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.



2.  Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.
3. Move the lever back to a neutral position to switch the lamps off.

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF



WARNING: The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps.

USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: *When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.*

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: *Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.*

Note: *The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.*

Front Fog Lamps Indicator

-  It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: *You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the low beam headlamps or the front fog lamps are on.*

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: *Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.*

Exterior Lighting

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

SWITCHING THE REAR FLOODLAMPS ON AND OFF



Press the button on the rear door to switch the rear floodlamps on and off.

Note: Rear floodlamps turn off approximately 30 minutes after you switch them on.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

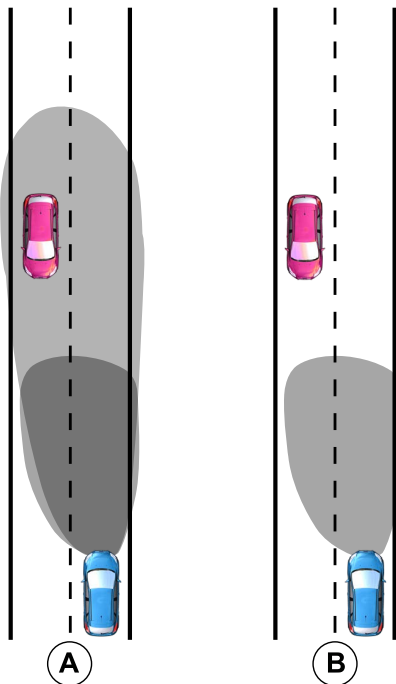
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 508). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

Exterior Lighting

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.*

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto High Beam** on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Exterior Lighting

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

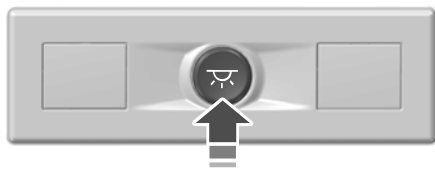
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Interior Lighting

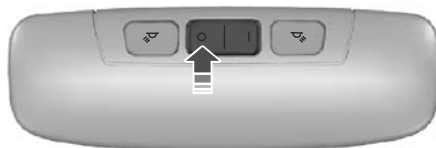
SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - BUS



Press the button on the overhead console to switch all of the interior lamps or emergency lighting on and off.

Note: The interior lamps turn off after approximately 30 minutes unless your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) or you lock the doors from outside your vehicle.

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - BUS/VAN



SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



E112208

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - BUS

Reading Lamp Function

When you switch the reading lamp function on, the rear reading lamps can be switched on and off.

Switching the Reading Lamp Function On and Off



Press the button on the overhead console.

Note: The indicator illuminates amber when the reading lamp function is on.

Interior Lighting

Switching the Rear Reading Lamps On and Off



Press the button on the interior lamp.

Note: You can only switch the rear reading lamps on and off when the reading lamp function is on.

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF - BUS/VAN



E293629

When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



CARGO LAMPS - VAN

SWITCHING THE CARGO LAMPS ON AND OFF

Press the button to switch the cargo lamps on or off when a door is open.

The switch is inside the cargo area, behind the left-hand rear door.

Note: The cargo lamps switch only operates when the ignition is off.

The cargo lamps turn off after a short period of time to prevent the battery from running out of charge.

If the cargo lamps turned off to prevent the battery from running out of charge or you switched them off by pressing the button, reset the switch before switching the cargo lamps on.

RESETTING THE CARGO LAMP SWITCH

To reset the switch, do one of the following:

- Lock or unlock a door.
- Open or close a front door.
- Switch the ignition on then off.

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

Driver Side One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Driver Side One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting Driver Side One-Touch Close

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the window control switch.
3. Lift the window control switch for one more second.
4. Release the window control switch.
5. Lift the window control switch again for one more second.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.

Windows

2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



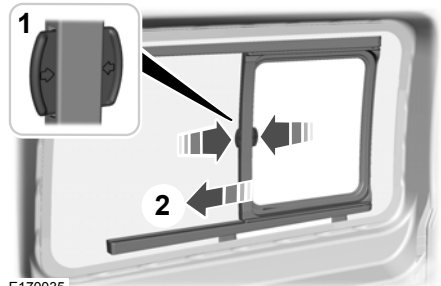
WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift the switch again for one more second.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

Note: *If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory.*

OPENING AND CLOSING THE SLIDING WINDOWS

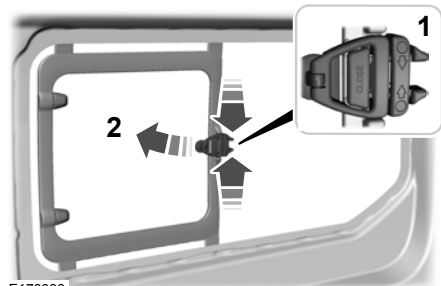


E170035

1. Press and hold the unlock button.
2. Slide the window.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE REAR QUARTER WINDOWS

Opening the Rear Quarter Windows



E170036

1. Press the unlock button to release the catch.

Note: *Depending on the lock type fitted, you have to either press the unlock buttons together or down to release the catch.*

2. Hold the catch and push the window open. Make sure the catch engages.

Windows

Note: *There is an audible click when the catch engages.*

Closing the Rear Quarter Windows

1. Hold and pull the catch to close the window.
2. Press the catch to engage the lock.

Note: *There is an audible click when the lock engages.*

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

DIGITAL INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE DIGITAL INTERIOR MIRROR

The digital interior mirror provides a normal rear view and a panoramic rear view in the mirror using a camera at the back of your vehicle.

DIGITAL INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

The camera is above the rear door. Optimal system performance requires a clear view by the camera lens.

When your vehicle is in reverse the mirror does not display the panoramic rear view.

SWITCHING BETWEEN NORMAL VIEW AND CAMERA VIEW

Pull or push the tab below the mirror to change the view.

DIGITAL INTERIOR MIRROR SETTINGS

1. Start your vehicle.
2. Pull the tab below the mirror toward you.
3. Adjust the angle and the brightness of the mirror.

Note: You can adjust the brightness with the arrow buttons.

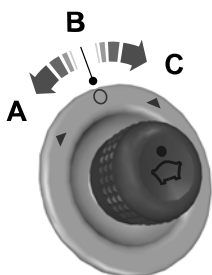
Note: Push and hold the menu button for a few seconds to adjust the angle with the arrow buttons.

Exterior Mirrors

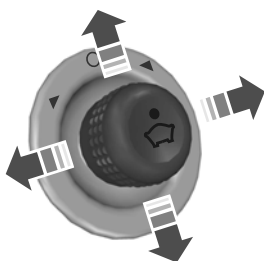
ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror switch.
- B Neutral.
- C Right-hand mirror switch.



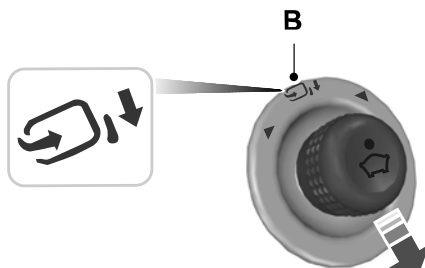
Move the adjustment control in the direction of the arrows to adjust the mirror.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS



Move the adjustment control downward to fold or unfold the mirrors.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: You can only fold the mirrors when the adjustment control is set to position B.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function could turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

Note: Do not manually fold or unfold power folding mirrors.

Loose Mirror

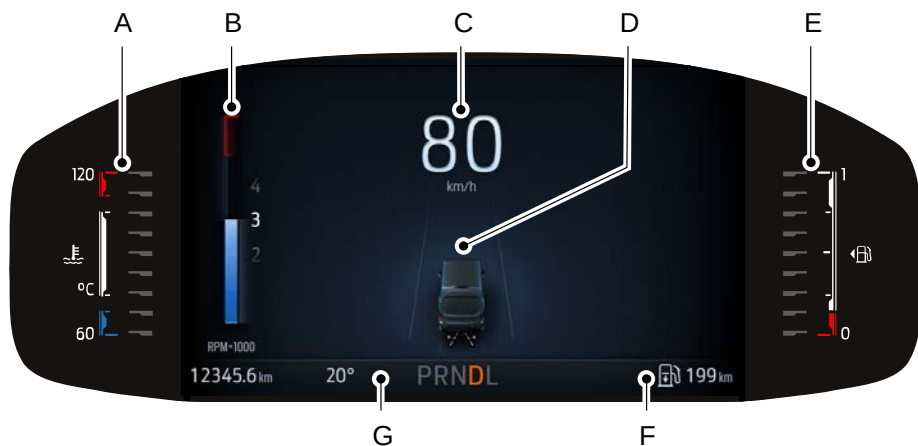
If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly, even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Instrument Cluster

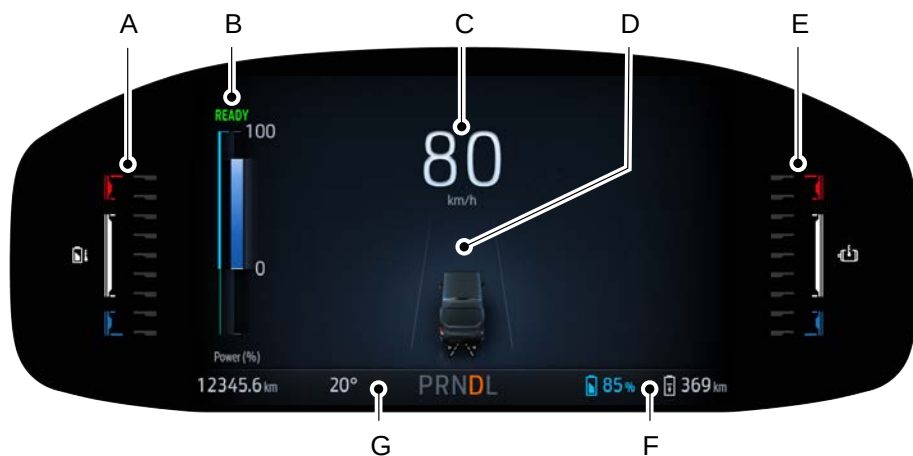
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - DIESEL



- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Tachometer.
- C Speedometer.
- D Instrument cluster display.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Distance to empty.
- G Information bar.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



- A High voltage battery temperature gauge.
- B Power gauge.
- C Speedometer.
- D Instrument cluster display.
- E Electric motor temperature gauge.
- F Vehicle driving range.
- G Information bar.

TACHOMETER - DIESEL

Indicates the engine speed.

Instrument Cluster

POWER GAUGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The Power Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

What is Power Availability Gauge

Displays total available vehicle power. Available power may be limited due to temperature or low battery state of charge. See **Maximizing Your Driving Range** (page 366).

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

FUEL GAUGE - DIESEL

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi).

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by such as:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.

Instrument Cluster

- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

Note: *It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery.*

Note: *Electric range is lower in cold temperatures due to reduced energy capacity in the high voltage battery. Set a departure time and cabin temperature to maintain battery temperature for best range and performance. See **Using Your Vehicle App and Charging** (page 235).*

Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Electric Range

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY GAUGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Displays the high voltage battery state of charge in the form of a gauge or a percentage. A full fill or 100% charge represents the total amount of energy you can get from plugging your vehicle in.

The indicator is normally white. When you reach a low battery condition, the indicator illuminates amber.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY TEMPERATURE GAUGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Displays the high voltage battery temperature.

When the battery temperature is outside the normal range, vehicle performance could be reduced and a corresponding message could display.

- When the temperature is too cold, continue driving to warm the system and improve performance.
- When the temperature is too hot, performance could be reduced to cool the system.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE - DIESEL

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

ELECTRIC MOTOR TEMPERATURE GAUGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Displays electric motor temperature.

When the electric motor temperature is outside the normal range, vehicle performance could be reduced and a corresponding message could display.

- When the temperature is too cold, continue driving to warm the system and improve performance.
- When the temperature is too hot, performance could be reduced to cool the system.

Instrument Cluster

WHAT IS THE INFORMATION BAR

The information bar displays information related to the ambient air temperature, odometer, compass, indicators and warning lamps.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information System And Cross Traffic Alert Warning Lamp



If the system malfunctions, the warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake Pad Wear Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the brake pads have worn down to a predetermined limit. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp



It illuminates or flashes yellow when the electric parking brake requires service.



Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Warning Lamps



If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Fuel Filter Service Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter.

You should drain water from the fuel filter water trap whenever the warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

High Voltage Battery



It illuminates white under normal conditions. If it illuminates amber, then the battery is low on charge.

Ignition Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Limited Performance Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle has limited performance due to a cold or hot battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Moving off Information System Warning Lamp



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when the system detects pedestrians or cyclists close to the front of your vehicle. If the system detects a fault a yellow indicator with a strikethrough appears in the instrument cluster display.

Instrument Cluster

Parking Brake Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Powertrain Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you. It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small. It illuminates amber when you switch the system off or if the system is not available.

Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects that the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a

selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Stop Safely Warning Lamp



It illuminates if an electrical component requires service or a failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter into a limited operating mode.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Lamp



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or flashes when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Vehicle Plugged In Warning Lamp



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 284).

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators



It illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action. It



illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Automatic High Beam Control On Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Blind Spot Information System Indicator



When the system detects a vehicle, the indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the indicator flashes.

Cross Traffic Alert Indicator



When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, the indicator illuminates and arrows appear in the instrument cluster display, or the Sync display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Direction Indicator



It flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

Eco Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Hazard Flasher Indicator



It flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

High Beam Headlamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Lamps On Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the side and rear lamps on.

Instrument Cluster

Lane Keeping Aid Indicator



It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Aid Mode or Alert and Aid Mode are selected.

Moving Off Information System Indicator



It illuminates white in the instrument cluster display when the system detects pedestrians or cyclists close to the front of your vehicle. It illuminates red in the instrument cluster display and an audible warning sounds when the risk of the collision increases.

Mud/Ruts Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Ready to Drive Indicator



Illuminates when you have switched on your vehicle and it is ready to drive. A corresponding message may appear stating ready to drive.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance, fuel economy or lower emissions.



Slippery Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



It flashes during operation. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tow/Haul Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

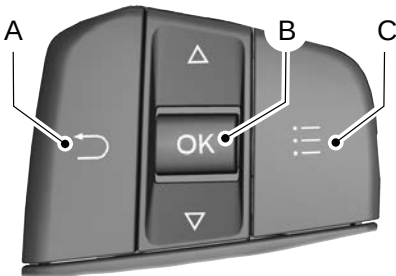
Instrument Cluster Display

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip Computer
Audio
Phone
Navigation
Settings

Instrument Cluster Display

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the **OK** button.

Note: The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.

Configure MyView
Power Distribution
Trailer Light Status
Battery Charge
Now Playing
Navigation
Trip Computer 1
Trip Computer 2
This Trip
Electric Economy
Fuel Economy
EV Coach
Tyre Pressure

Note: Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.

Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select **Right Gauge**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - DIESEL

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.

ELECTRIC ECONOMY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

This screen shows your average driving distance per kilowatt-hour of electricity used on your vehicle.

Distance per full charge is also shown. This is an estimate of the electric range you would have if you plugged in and fully charged your vehicle right now. The higher your electric economy, the higher your distance per full charge.

Your electric economy is affected by your driving style and route, climate control use, outside temperature and other factors. Best economy is achieved with mild to moderate acceleration and braking, moderate speeds and low climate control usage.

Instrument Cluster Display

Note: *Electric economy is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116).*

BATTERY CHARGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Displays a high voltage battery gauge and an estimate of available electric driving range. The high voltage battery gauge displays the total amount of charge associated with your available electric driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

BRAKE COACH - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.

Note: *While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.*

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 115).

TRIP SUMMARY

The trip summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip screen. See **Trip Data** (page 119).

VEHICLE CHARGING STATUS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The vehicle charge status displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle when plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your charge settings through the touchscreen.

Personalized Settings

CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Language**.
4. Press a setting.

Note: *Available languages vary by region.*

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Measurement Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Temperature unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Tyre Pressure Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

Trip Computer

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

Note: *This trip is a selectable screen. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 119).*

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen you want to reset.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TRIP DATA

Trip 1 and 2

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy and total trip distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off.

Note: *Trip 1 and 2 are selectable screens. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 119).*

This Trip

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This Trip resets each time you start your vehicle.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS - DIESEL

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

Note: Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The vehicle is switched on.
- The vehicle battery is below the minimum operating voltage.

ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Remote Start** on or off.

Note: To remote start with FordPass, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 507).

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE - DIESEL



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

Note: The turn signal lamps flash twice.

Note: The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

Note: The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

Note: The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

Note: A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

Note: The turn signal lamps flash twice.

Note: The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

Note: The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

Note: The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the vehicle on and drive your vehicle.

Note: A maximum of two remote starts, or one remote start with an extension are allowed. To reset the restart procedure switch the vehicle on, then off.

Note: If your vehicle is plugged in during remote start it uses energy from your charging source.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

REMOTE START SETTINGS

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press a setting.

Climate Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Climate Control

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 127).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

Climate Control

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
3. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
4. Direct air toward the side windows.

Climate Control

5. Close the instrument panel air vents.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRIC HEATER ON AND OFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to switch the electric heater on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Note: Disabling the system helps maximize your driving range.

Note: The system does not work in some climate control modes.

Note: This button does not switch off the climate control system.

Note: In certain conditions, for example warm weather, the system could not activate or could run with reduced performance when switched on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 127).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - DIESEL

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.

2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

General Hints

- Use of the climate system will reduce your vehicles driving range. Conserve battery charge by using climate control features when necessary.
- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. The blower motor speed may reduce until the air warms.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

Press **MAX A/C**.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Rear Passenger Climate Control

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents



When you direct air to the overhead air vents, the system distributes cold air.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



When you direct air to the footwell air vents, the system distributes hot air.

Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents and the Footwell Air Vents



When you direct air to the Overhead and footwell air vents, the system distributes warm air.

Auxiliary Heater

WHAT IS THE AUXILIARY HEATER

The system is designed to reduce the time needed to heat the engine when it is running. It turns on or off depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

AUXILIARY HEATER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the auxiliary heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

Note: *Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, in front of the right-hand front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with the heater operation.*

Note: *When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

Note: *If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.*

SWITCHING THE AUXILIARY HEATER ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Aux Heater** on or off.

AUXILIARY HEATER INDICATORS

Secondary Interior Heating System Active Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Parking Heater

WHAT IS THE PARKING HEATER

The system is designed to provide heat when your vehicle is parked.

The system assists the engine to reach operating temperature sooner. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

The system keeps the windshield clear of thin ice and helps prevent condensation.

PARKING HEATER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, under the left-hand side of the vehicle near the B-pillar, is free from snow, ice, mud, and any other blockages to avoid issues with heater operation.

Note: If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.

Note: When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.

PARKING HEATER LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when your vehicle is stationary with the engine off.

The system does not operate in any of the following conditions:

- The battery charge level is low.
- The fuel level is low.
- The outside temperature is too high.

The system may not correctly operate when your vehicle is parked on a steep slope.

PARKING HEATER SETTINGS

SWITCHING CONTINUE HEAT ON

When you switch the ignition off, the heater starts or continues running if conditions permit for up to 30 minutes.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Switch **Continue Heat** on or off.

Note: You can use this mode to maintain a warm cabin after you switch the ignition off. After the heater completes this mode, the checkbox in the touchscreen resets to unchecked.

SETTING THE PARKING HEATER TIMER

The system has three different modes that you can set.

Single Time

Allows you to set one heating cycle for a specific day. If conditions permit, the parking heater starts up to 40 minutes prior to the set date and time.

Parking Heater

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Press **Heater Programming**.
5. Press **Single Time**.
6. Set the date and time you prefer.
7. Switch **Activate** on or off.

Note: The date and time must be set before you can activate this mode.

Note: The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.

Recurring Time One

Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Press **Heater Programming**.
5. Press **Recurring Time One**.
6. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
7. Switch **Activate** on or off.

Note: The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.

Recurring Time Two

Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Park Heater**.
4. Press **Heater Programming**.
5. Press **Recurring Time Two**.
6. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
7. Switch **Activate** on or off.

Note: The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.

SWITCHING THE PARKING HEATER ON AND OFF WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

The parking heater transmitter allows you to remotely request the heater to start and run for up to 30 minutes or to stop all heater modes.

To start the heater, press and hold the **ON** or **HEAT** button on the transmitter until a green LED light illuminates on the transmitter.

To stop the heater, press and hold the **OFF** button on the transmitter until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter. This applies only for the heater mode running at the present time, so future timer settings or future continue heat settings do not disable.

Note: Up to three transmitters can be paired to your vehicle.

Note: Electronic devices that operate in the same frequency may affect the range of the transmitter.

Parking Heater

PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL INDICATORS

Transmitter LED	Description
Green	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing green	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.
Red	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing red	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.

Note: *The LED light on the remote transmitter does not indicate the actual status of the heater. The light does not guarantee the heater received a signal to start or stop.*



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHANGING THE PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY

The remote control uses three coin-type lithium-ion batteries CR2032 or equivalent.



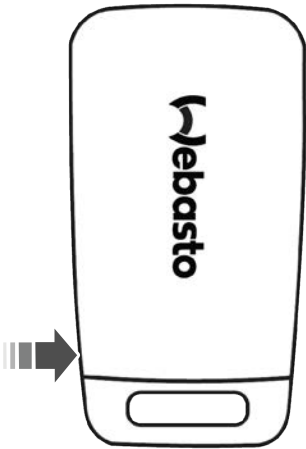
WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver into the position shown and carefully remove the back-cover.

Parking Heater



2. Remove the batteries.
3. Install three new batteries with the + facing upward.
4. Replace the back-cover.

PARKING HEATER – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING HEATER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park heater not started Low fuel level	Displays if the fuel level is too low.
Park heater not started Low battery state of charge	Displays if the battery is low or has no charge.
Park heater not started Outside temperature too high	Displays if the outside temperature is too high.
Park heater not started Vehicle not started over 7 days	If the vehicle has not been started in seven days or more before a programmed start, the timer is deleted and must be reset.

Interior Air Quality

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

LOCATING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

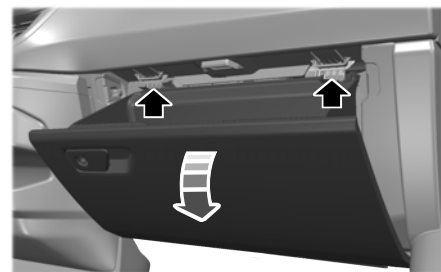
You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

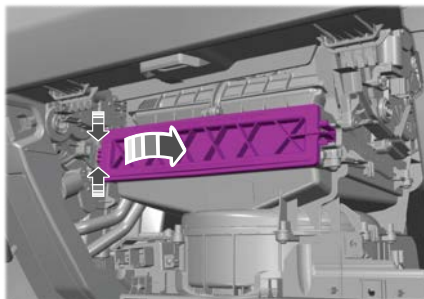
Replace the filter at regular intervals.

The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

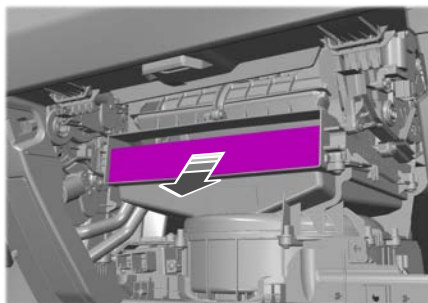
To access the cabin air filter:



1. Open the glove compartment.



2. Pinch the tab on the side of the air filter cover.
3. Open the cover.



4. Pull the cabin air filter toward you to remove it.

Note: Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Interior Air Quality

Note: *Using an aftermarket cabin air filter could reduce cabin air filtration and climate control performance.*

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

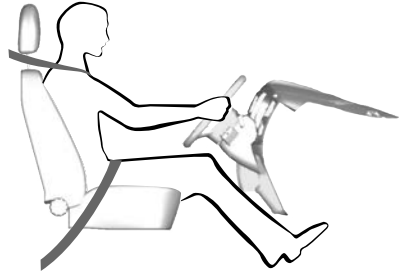


WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

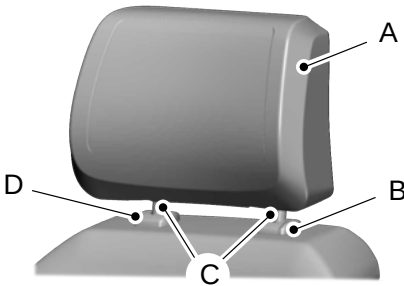
Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped).

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

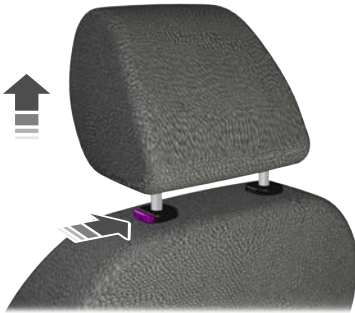
Front Seats

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

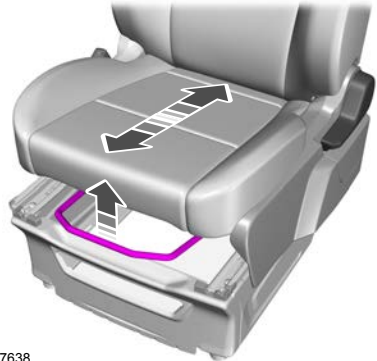
MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

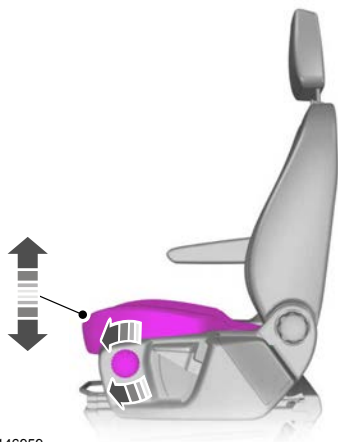


E177638

Note: The driver seat has removable stop bolts on the track to enable access to the vehicle battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 419). See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 421).

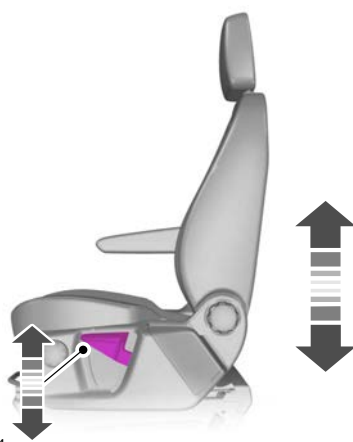
Front Seats

ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION



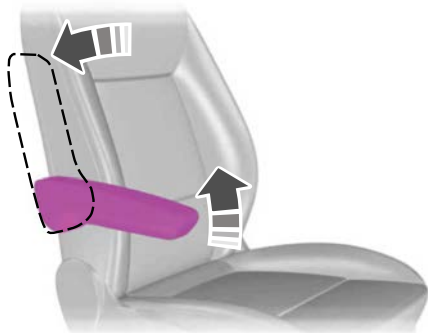
E146959

ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



E146384

FOLDING THE SEAT ARMREST



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



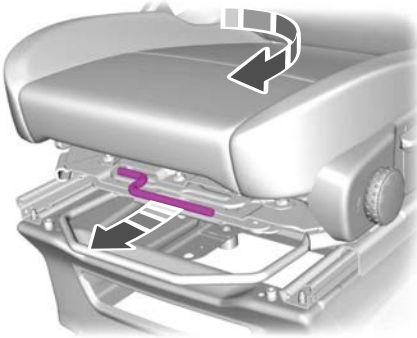
E146386

Front Seats

SWIVELING THE SEAT



WARNING: Make sure the seat locks into place and is facing forward when your vehicle is moving.



The seat can swivel through 180 degrees in an inboard direction.

You may need to adjust the seat to allow sufficient clearance for it to swivel in a single motion.

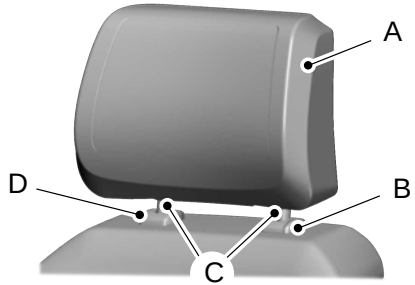
Note: We recommend that the seat is unoccupied.

Swivel Seat Audible Warning

Sounds when the driver or passenger seat is not locked into place, and the ignition is on.

POWER SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve lock and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

Front Seats



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

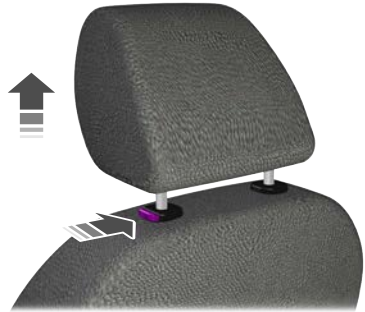
1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.



2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

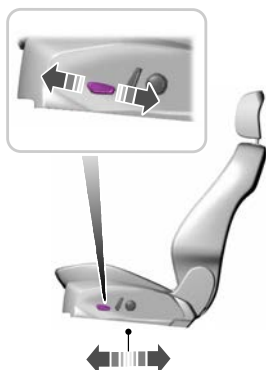


WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

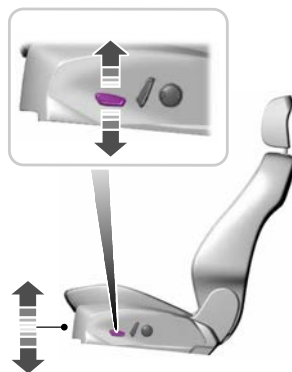


WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

Front Seats



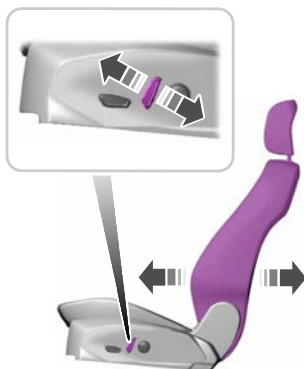
ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



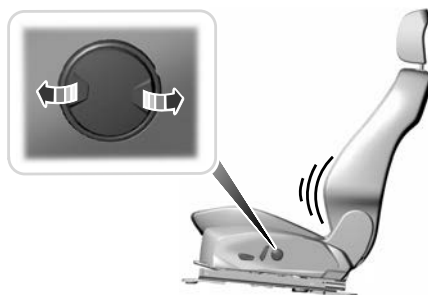
ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: Reclining the seat back can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



Front Seats

HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: Based on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.

Automatic Heated Seats

When you switch on the auto setting, the heated seats switch on to match your climate control setting.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

Rear Seats

REAR SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: When reclining the backrest forward and backward, take care not to get your hands caught between the seat backrest and the frame, catches or mechanism. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

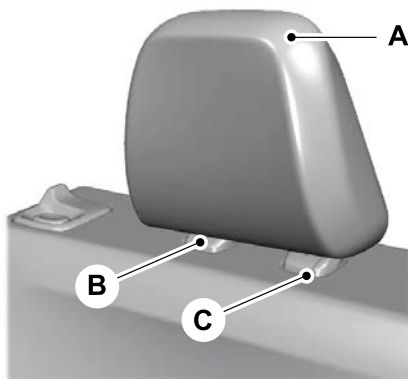
WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

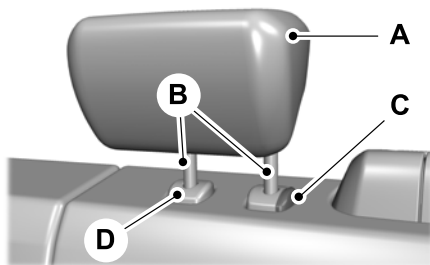
Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve.
- C Locking guide sleeve.

Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



Rear Seats

The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped).

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

The outermost head restraints are non-adjustable.

Pull the center head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the center head restraint:

- 1. Press and hold the unlock and remove button.
- 2. Push the head restraint down.

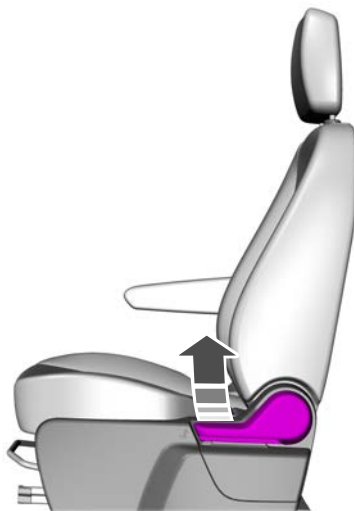
REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

- 1. Fold the seat backrest forward before removing the head restraint.
- 2. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
- 3. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
- 4. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

- 1. Fold the seat backrest forward before installing the head restraint.
- 2. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



E175474

Rear Seats

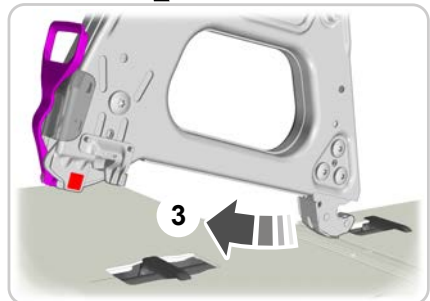
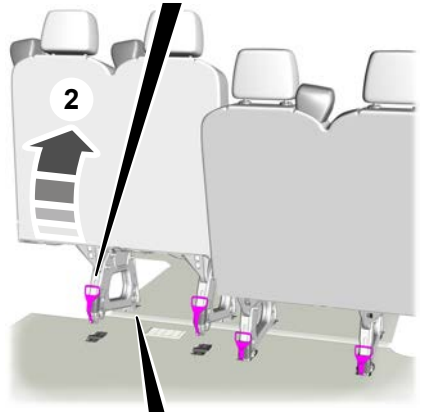
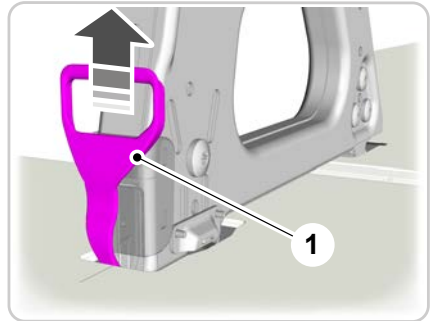
REMOVING THE SEATS



WARNING: Seats can weigh up to 60 kg (132 lb). Do not attempt to lift or carry any seat on your own.



WARNING: Do not use the release handles to lift or carry the seat.



E173870

1. Pull the release handle up at an angle from the floor.

Rear Seats

2. While holding the handle in this position, tilt the top of the seat forward to release the seat frame rear catches from the floor.
3. When the rear seat latches are clear of the floor, release the handle.
4. Pull the seat backward to release the seat frame front catches.
5. Remove the seat from the vehicle.

Note: Two persons are required to release the seat handles and remove the seat.

Note: You can only remove seats that have integral release handles.

Note: The seatback does not fold forward.

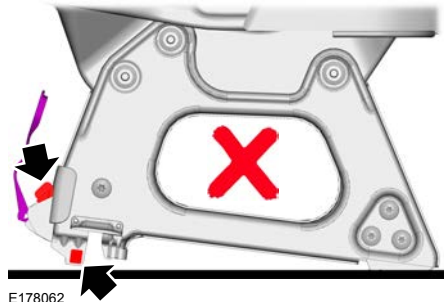
INSTALLING THE SEATS



WARNING: Make sure that the floor catches are free from obstruction before installing the seats.



WARNING: Make sure that you securely fasten the seat catches when installing. Make sure that the latches are correctly engaged by checking the red latch indicators.



E178062

1. Align the seat frame front catches.
2. Push the seat forward to engage the seat frame front catches.
3. Align the seat frame rear catches.
4. Allow the seat to drop under its own weight for the last 6-8 in (15-20 cm).

Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Select **Alert & Horn** or **Alert Only** or **Off**.

Note: The default setting is **Alert Only**.

Note: If you choose **Alert Only**, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

Note: Performing a vehicle system reset causes the system to switch on again.

Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Switch **Child Seat Installed** on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a latch system baby seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.

Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: These USB ports can also charge devices.

Note: Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.

Note: We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Behind the first row seats.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.



Press the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

USB Ports

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The vehicle functions as a portable generator and can power devices that require up to the rating listed on power outlet label.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not connect any vehicle power outlets to any premises. This can create a backfeed to utility lines. Failure to follow this instruction could result in property damage, fire, electrical shock or death.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

When you switch the rear power outlet on, the vehicle power down timer is disabled and the vehicle continues to be powered on.

Note: We recommend using UL approved devices for use with the power outlet.

Note: Do not exceed 2.3 kW capacity. Electrical overload can cause ground faults or system errors.

Note: Make sure there is no damage to the outlets before driving your vehicle.

Note: Power could be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize the performance of the system.

Note: **Pro Power Onboard** is available when your vehicle is charging. Using the power outlets while the vehicle is charging could increase the vehicle charging time.

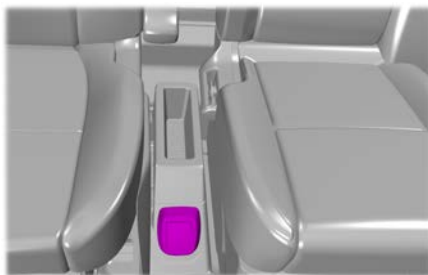
Grounding Type

Neutral bonded: The neutral of the inverter generator is bonded to system ground. Connecting loads that also have neutral bonded to ground causes the ground fault detection to trip.

Note: If additional grounding measures are required, consult with a qualified electrician.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

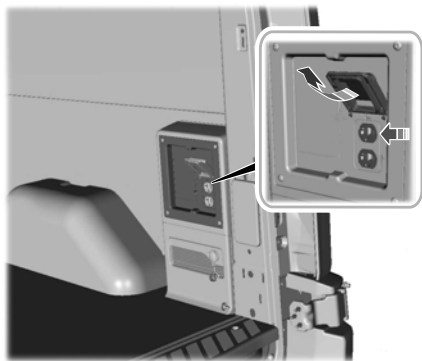
Front Location



The front power outlet could be on the console between the front seats or on the inner side of the passenger seat pedestal.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

Rear Location (If Equipped)



The rear power outlets are at the rear of the vehicle.

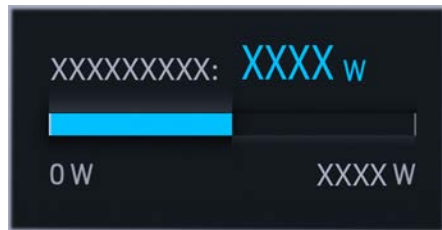
POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

Power Outlet Status Indicator

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Indicator Status	Description
On	The power point is working and the vehicle is on.
Off	The power point is off and the vehicle is off.
Flashing	The power point is in fault mode.

Power Mode Indicator



The power mode indicator displays the currently used power and total available power level on the touchscreen. When you switch the power outlets off, the indicator displays a reduced available power level. When you switch the power outlets on, the indicator displays the full available power.

Note: Make sure that plugged in devices do not exceed the available power displayed on the power mode indicator.

SWITCHING THE REAR POWER OUTLET ON AND OFF

When the vehicle is on

Using the touchscreen

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Pro Power Onboard**.
3.  Switch **Rear Outlets** on or off.
4. Press Keep Pro Power ON toggle on the touchscreen to keep the power outlets on after turning the vehicle off.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

Using the Rear Outlet Control



1. Press the button to switch the power outlet on and off.

Note: Make sure to Keep Pro Power ON toggle enabled before turning off the vehicle.

When the vehicle is off

Using the Rear Outlet Control



1. Press the button to switch the power outlet on within one minute of exiting the vehicle.

2. If the vehicle is locked, press the button to switch the power outlet on within one minute of unlocking the vehicle or make sure a passive key is present within the detection range.
3. Press the button to switch the power outlet off.

Note: When the vehicle is off, the Pro Power Onboard notifications are unavailable on the touchscreen and the FordPass app.

Note: Avoid unintended use of power outlet when the vehicle is off.

SETTING THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY RESERVE LIMIT

When the vehicle is in Park (P) you can set a high voltage battery reserve limit to save a range which you can drive your vehicle before recharging.

You can set the high voltage battery reserve limit on the touchscreen.

A notification indicates when the vehicle reaches the pre-set limit and **Pro Power Onboard** turns off.

Note: After your vehicle reaches the pre-set limit, the vehicle power down timer is enabled again. See **What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer** (page 181).

RESETTING GROUND FAULT DETECTION

Disconnect all electrical loads before you reset the ground fault.

Use the controls on the touchscreen to test the ground fault detection circuit.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The vehicle functions as a portable generator and can power devices that require up to the rating listed on power outlet label.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not connect any vehicle power outlets to any premises. This can create a backfeed to utility lines. Failure to follow this instruction could result in property damage, fire, electrical shock or death.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

When you switch the rear power outlet on, the vehicle power down timer is disabled and the vehicle continues to be powered on.

Note: We recommend using UL approved devices for use with the power outlet.

Note: Do not exceed 2.3 kW capacity. Electrical overload can cause ground faults or system errors.

Note: Make sure there is no damage to the outlets before driving your vehicle.

Note: Power could be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize the performance of the system.

Note: **Pro Power Onboard** is available when your vehicle is charging. Using the power outlets while the vehicle is charging could increase the vehicle charging time.

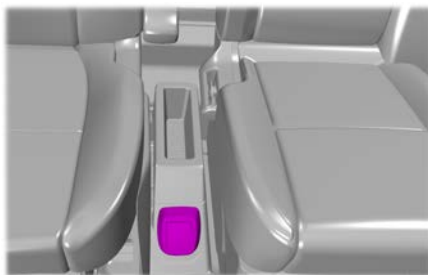
Grounding Type

Neutral bonded: The neutral of the inverter generator is bonded to system ground. Connecting loads that also have neutral bonded to ground causes the ground fault detection to trip.

Note: If additional grounding measures are required, consult with a qualified electrician.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

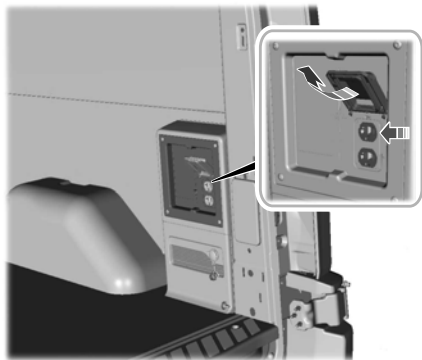
Front Location



The front power outlet could be on the console between the front seats or on the inner side of the passenger seat pedestal.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

Rear Location (If Equipped)



The rear power outlets are at the rear of the vehicle.

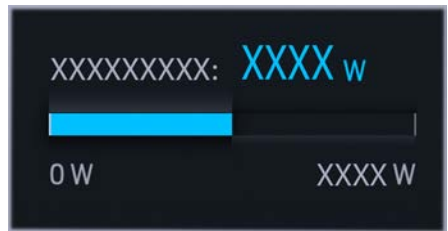
POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

Power Outlet Status Indicator

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Indicator Status	Description
On	The power point is working and the vehicle is on.
Off	The power point is off and the vehicle is off.
Flashing	The power point is in fault mode.

Power Mode Indicator



The power mode indicator displays the currently used power and total available power level on the touchscreen. When you switch the power outlets off, the indicator displays a reduced available power level. When you switch the power outlets on, the indicator displays the full available power.

Note: Make sure that plugged in devices do not exceed the available power displayed on the power mode indicator.

SWITCHING THE REAR POWER OUTLET ON AND OFF

When the vehicle is on

Using the touchscreen

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Pro Power Onboard**.
3.  Switch **Rear Outlets** on or off.
4. Press Keep Pro Power ON toggle on the touchscreen to keep the power outlets on after turning the vehicle off.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

Using the Rear Outlet Control



1. Press the button to switch the power outlet on and off.

Note: Make sure to Keep Pro Power ON toggle enabled before turning off the vehicle.

When the vehicle is off

Using the Rear Outlet Control



1. Press the button to switch the power outlet on within one minute of exiting the vehicle.

2. If the vehicle is locked, press the button to switch the power outlet on within one minute of unlocking the vehicle or make sure a passive key is present within the detection range.
3. Press the button to switch the power outlet off.

Note: When the vehicle is off, the Pro Power Onboard notifications are unavailable on the touchscreen and the FordPass app.

Note: Avoid unintended use of power outlet when the vehicle is off.

SETTING THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY RESERVE LIMIT

When the vehicle is in Park (P) you can set a high voltage battery reserve limit to save a range which you can drive your vehicle before recharging.

You can set the high voltage battery reserve limit on the touchscreen.

A notification indicates when the vehicle reaches the pre-set limit and **Pro Power Onboard** turns off.

Note: After your vehicle reaches the pre-set limit, the vehicle power down timer is enabled again. See **What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer** (page 181).

RESETTING GROUND FAULT DETECTION

Disconnect all electrical loads before you reset the ground fault.

Use the controls on the touchscreen to test the ground fault detection circuit.

POWER OUTLET – TROUBLESHOOTING

POWER OUTLET – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Item(s) plugged in exceeded the system's maximum capacity. Try unplugging one or more items and reset. See Owner's Manual for details.	Make sure that plugged in devices do not exceed the available power displayed. Devices could exceed the power rating shown the device label when plugged in. Unplug the device and switch the vehicle on and off to reset the system.
Generator System is outside its operating temperature and capability is reduced. See Owner's Manual for details.	Power could be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize the performance of the system.
Another power source is trying to supply power to your vehicle's AC outlets. Disconnect vehicle from that power source. See Owner's Manual for details.	Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems.
This button tests outlets for proper operation of ground fault detection. In a successful test, Pro Power Onboard detects the ground fault and turns off. See Owner's Manual for details.	The power outlet is in fault mode. Make sure that all devices are unplugged from the system. Use the controls on the touchscreen to reset the system. Switch your vehicle on and off if the touchscreen controls are unable to reset the system. See an authorized dealer if these steps do not fix the fault.

POWER OUTLET – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there a warning about something being plugged into the rear power outlet when I do not have anything plugged in?

- One or more of the rear power outlet covers could be ajar or broken. Make sure the generator is off and check the outlet covers. Select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning.

Why can I not shift my vehicle out of Park (P)?

- Make sure the rear power outlet covers are closed and not damaged. Press OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning to be able to move the transmission from Park (P).

What do I do when my instrument cluster display is malfunctioning and I cannot acknowledge the warning to put the transmission in Drive (D).

- Power the vehicle off and make sure nothing is plugged into the rear power outlet and all outlet covers are closed. Start the vehicle and select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning. Have your vehicle serviced soon.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices that require up to the rating on the outlet cover.

Note: *The total power delivered is divided if more than one outlet is used.*

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

Note: *This feature has a maximum output of 400 watts when the vehicle is in park (P).*

Note: *While in drive (D), the maximum outlet output is 300 watts.*

POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

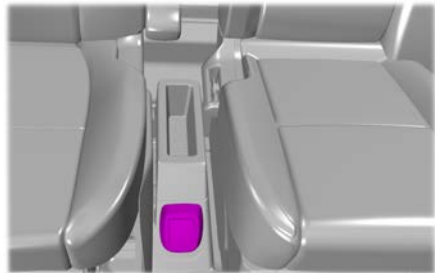
Devices could exceed the power rating shown the device label when plugged in. Unplug the device and switch the ignition on and off to reset the system.

Do not use the power outlet for these types of electric devices:

- Cathode ray tube televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.

- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS



The power outlet is on the console between the front seats.

POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Indicator Status	Description
On	The power outlet is on.
Off	The power outlet is off.
Flashing	The power outlet is in fault mode.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

Note: *Due to different technologies used on its construction, some devices may exceed the capacity shown on its label when they are initially plugged in.*

Note: *The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the Watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Open the driver door to reset the power outlet. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on. Do not plug your device back in if it exceeds the maximum outlet output.*

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets could be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the cargo area.

Cigar Lighter

CIGAR LIGHTER PRECAUTIONS



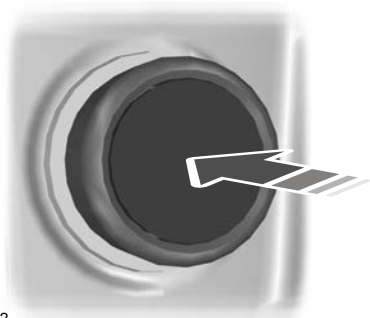
WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.*

USING THE CIGAR LIGHTER



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It pops out after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

Storage (If Equipped)

BOTTLE HOLDERS

BOTTLE HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not place glass objects in the bottle holder. Items could become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

LOCATING THE BOTTLE HOLDERS



OVERHEAD STORAGE

LOCATING THE OVERHEAD STORAGE



WARNING: Do not place heavy objects in the overhead console. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E169073

OVERHEAD STORAGE LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum evenly distributed shelf load is 20 kg (44 lb).

CUP HOLDERS

CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



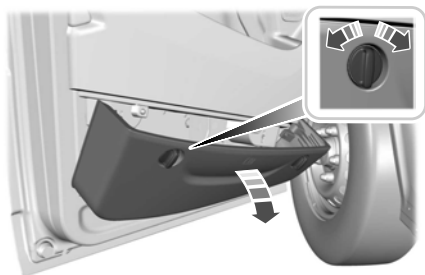
WARNING: Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

Storage (If Equipped)

FRONT DOOR STORAGE

OPENING THE FRONT DOOR STORAGE COMPARTMENT



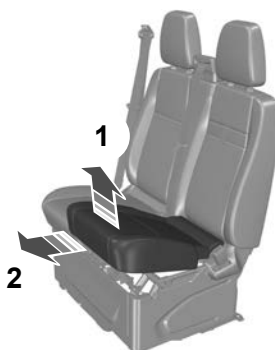
E169150

Turn the retaining clips counterclockwise.

UNDER SEAT STORAGE

LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT

The under seat storage compartment is under the front passenger seat.



E154714

1. Lift the front of the passenger seat cushion.
2. Pull the seat cushion forward.
3. Tilt the seat cushion forward.

Note: Both the inboard and outboard seats have a storage compartment.

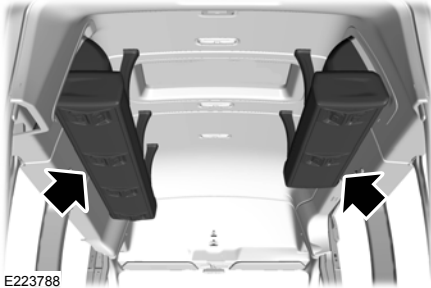
Storage (If Equipped)

REAR OVERHEAD STORAGE

LOCATING THE REAR OVERHEAD STORAGE



WARNING: Do not place heavy objects on the shelf. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



REAR OVERHEAD STORAGE LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum evenly distributed shelf load is 18 kg (40 lb).

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

IGNITION SWITCH



Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

Note: Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release and wait until the engine starts.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.

Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. An indicator light on the button illuminates when then ignition is on and when the engine starts.

Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.



1. Turn the key to position **II**.

Note: Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



3. Turn the key to position **III**.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until the glow plug indicator turns off before starting the engine.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).



1. Turn the key to position **II**.

Note: Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.

2. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



3. Turn the key to position **III**.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until the glow plug indicator turns off before starting the engine.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
 - Make sure that the parking brake is on.
 - Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).
1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

Starting and Stopping the Engine

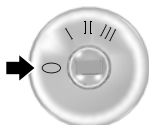


2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position **0**.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

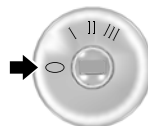
1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position **0**.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



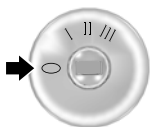
4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Turn the key to position **0**.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



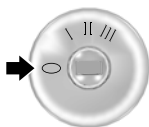
1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Turn the key to position **0**.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in

steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period of time. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power.

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

After the shutdown, another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel.

Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Switch **30min max idle** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

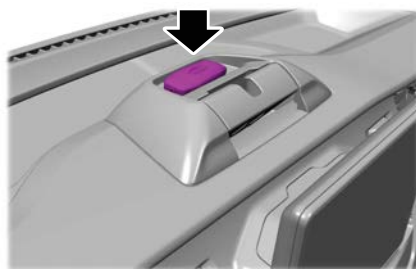
OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **Reset** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control in the instrument panel slot as shown with the buttons facing upward.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

Starting and Stopping the Engine



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

- If you cannot start the engine, do the following:
1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Why can I not start the engine?

- If you cannot start the engine, do the following:
1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 176).

Starting and Powering Off - Battery Electric Vehicle

STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).
- Make sure there is no charge cord coupler connected to the vehicle.

STARTING THE VEHICLE

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button start.

POWERING OFF



WARNING: Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and press the push button start to restart your vehicle.

When your vehicle is not moving and is started, or the power is in accessory mode, press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

Only in a case of emergency, when your vehicle is moving, press the push button start three times within two seconds, or press and hold for at least one second. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. When your vehicle comes to a complete stop, shift into park (P).

RESTARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER POWERING OFF

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Starting and Powering Off - Battery Electric Vehicle

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button start. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains on until you press the push button start, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

If you open and close a door while your vehicle is on, the system searches for a valid remote control. You cannot start your vehicle if the system does not detect a valid remote control within 10 seconds.

VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

WHAT IS THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

Vehicle power down timer automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period of time in order to save battery power.

HOW DOES THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

After the shutdown, another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save battery power.

Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Switch **Vehicle Power Down Timer** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the vehicle power down timer. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the vehicle on.

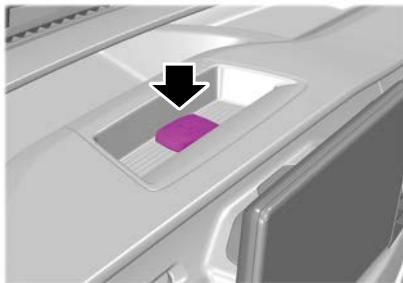
OVERRIDING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

You can stop the shutdown or reset the timer before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control in the instrument panel slot as shown with the buttons facing upward.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 181).

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Auto StartStop** on or off.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action. It illuminates gray when the system is not available.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when you disabled the feature.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Auto StartStop** on or off.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Note: *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action. It illuminates gray when the system is not available.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when you disabled the feature.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Shift to P, then restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Fuel and Refueling - 2.0L EcoBlue

FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.

- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

Fuel and Refueling - 2.0L EcoBlue

FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - HYDROTREATED VEGETABLE OIL



WARNING: Do not mix hydrotreated vegetable oil with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use hydrotreated vegetable oil that meets the specification defined by EN 15940 or the relevant national specification.

Note: Do not use normal vegetable oil as this could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments. Your Warranty does not cover repairs or replacement of parts needed to correct the effects of using such unadvised products.

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - DIESEL



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments. Your Warranty does not cover repairs or replacement of parts needed to correct the effects of using such unadvised products.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is in the glove compartment or in the front right-hand side stepwell storage compartment.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel and Refueling - 2.0L EcoBlue

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 190).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.

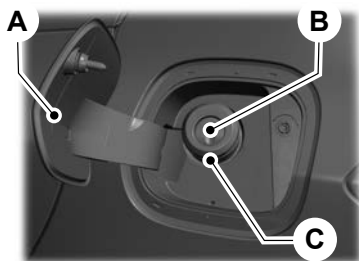
Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

Fuel and Refueling - 2.0L EcoBlue

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

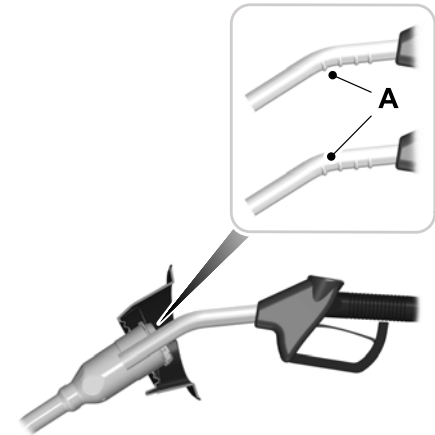
WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

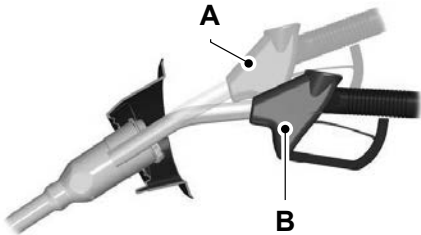
WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. Open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

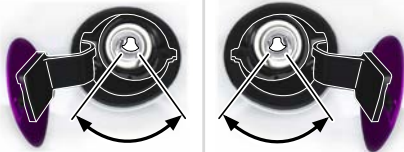
Fuel and Refueling - 2.0L EcoBlue



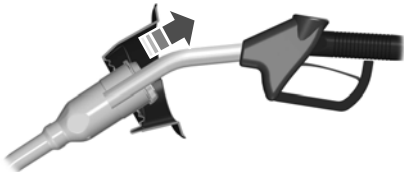
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with standard fuel tank.	70 L (15.4 gal)
Vehicles with larger fuel tank.	95 L (20.9 gal)

Fuel and Refueling - 2.0L EcoBlue

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

FUEL AND REFUELING AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel.

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check fuel fill inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Diesel Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The diesel particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful diesel particulates from the exhaust gas.

HOW DOES THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

The diesel particulate filter reduces emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The system must periodically clean the exhaust particles that gather inside the filter. This is carried out in three ways, passive regeneration, active regeneration and manual regeneration.

Passive Regeneration

In passive regeneration, the normal exhaust system temperature cleans the filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs during normal vehicle operating conditions due to driving patterns.

Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full, active regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles.

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not operating your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, messages appear in the information display as a reminder for you to drive your vehicle in order to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, the information display shows a cleaning exhaust filter message.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



WARNING: When the **Exhaust filter cleaning** message appears in the information display, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Note: Avoid running out of fuel.

Note: During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

Note: Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Failure to perform active or manual regeneration when instructed could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle disables the ability for active and manual regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage your vehicle Warranty may not cover.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

WHAT IS DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Diesel particulate filter manual regeneration allows you to manually start regeneration of the diesel particulate filter at idle to clean the filter.

Note: *If you are not sure whether your vehicle has this feature, contact your authorized dealer.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Stay clear of the exhaust tailpipe during regeneration. Hot exhaust gases can burn you badly.

You may not be able to use manual regeneration if the service engine soon warning lamp appears in the information display.

Note: *During the use of manual regeneration, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION REQUIREMENTS

You can use the manual regeneration feature when a message appears in the information display and you are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic active regeneration or if you choose to manually start the regeneration of the diesel particulate filter while the vehicle is idle.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Before you start manual regeneration, do the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Shift into park (P) or neutral (N), on stable, level ground.
- Park your vehicle outside of any structure.
- Park your vehicle 3–5 m (10–15 ft) away from any obstructions and away from materials that can easily combust or melt, for example paper, leaves, petroleum products, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material.
- Make sure there is a minimum of 1/8 tank of fuel.
- Make sure all fluids are at proper levels.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION LIMITATIONS

You cannot use manual regeneration until the diesel particulate filter load percentage has reached 100%. The diesel particulate filter load percentage fluctuates up and down when driving your vehicle due to active and passive regenerations.

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, low speed drive cycles less than 40 km/h (25 mph), short drive cycles, drive time less than 15 minutes or the vehicle does not fully warm up, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the diesel particulate filter system.

Aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system may reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system or engine. This may also degrade vehicle performance and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

STARTING DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Start your vehicle and when the engine has reached normal operating temperature, press the information display control button on the steering wheel. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 115).

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a message appears in the information display to initiate filter cleaning. See **Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages** (page 198). Follow the prompts to initiate manual regeneration. If you are unsure about the messages, contact an authorized dealer. The display confirms when the operation has started and when it has finished.



When the system is at the point of oversaturation, the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. You cannot initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Once manual regeneration starts, engine speed increases and the cooling fan speed increases. Due to a change in engine speed and cooling fan speed, you may notice a change in sound.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once manual regeneration completes, the engine speed returns to normal idling. The exhaust system remains very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over materials that could burn until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the diesel particulate filter, ambient temperature and altitude, manual regeneration lasts approximately 30 minutes.

Diesel Particulate Filter

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter system, or when the system is at the point of oversaturation, the powertrain warning lamp and the malfunction indicator lamp illuminate to inform you that your vehicle requires service. You may not be able to initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Exhaust filter cleaning	Your vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the vehicle burns the particles off, the exhaust temperature will return to normal levels. This message is NORMAL .
Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter overloaded Clean now	
Exhaust filter at limit Clean now	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	
Exhaust filter drive completed	Your diesel particulate filter is clean.
Exhaust filter cleaned	Your diesel particulate filter is clean (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter cleaning stopped	The manual regeneration process has stopped (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer. Ignoring this warning message could lead to reduced drivability and customer expense, including damage to the diesel particulate filter. Your new vehicle warranty may not cover this damage.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

WHAT IS THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

Selective catalytic reduction is an engine emission control system that reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. In case of contact with your eyes, immediately flush with water and get prompt medical attention. In case of contact with your skin, immediately clean with soap and water. If you swallow any AdBlue®, drink plenty of water and immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: Only refill the AdBlue® tank in a well-ventilated area. When you remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap or an AdBlue® container cap, ammonia vapors may escape. Ammonia vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.



WARNING: Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system results in severe vehicle performance limitation, eventually your vehicle not starting.



WARNING: Immediately refill the AdBlue® fluid when low and replace when contaminated. Drive with caution and be careful where you stop because you cannot restart your vehicle until you refill or replace the fluid.

Do not dilute the AdBlue® with water or any other liquid.

Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.

Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.

Note: *The use and refilling of AdBlue® is mandatory for the vehicle to comply with the legal emission requirements.*

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM GUIDELINES

- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store the AdBlue® container in direct sunlight.
- Store the AdBlue® at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

- Do not store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.
- AdBlue® is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.



The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK IN COLD WEATHER

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

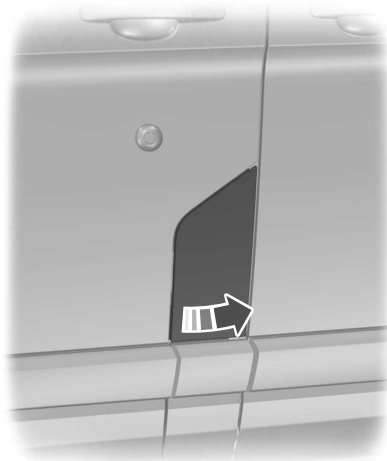
Note: It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).

Note: If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A FUEL STATION PUMP

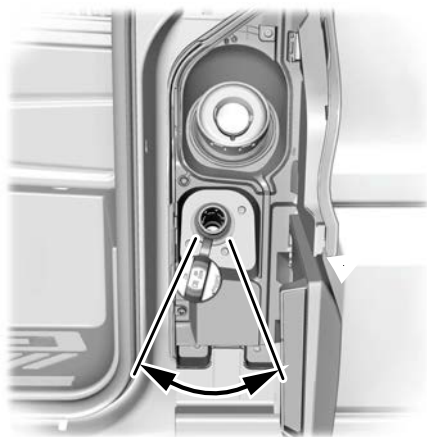
Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System



4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

Note: *The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.*

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A PORTABLE CONTAINER

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
 2. Place the spout onto the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.
 3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
 4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
 5. Pour the fluid into the tank.
- Note:** *The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.*
6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
 7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
 8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
 9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
 10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID LEVEL

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle maintenance**.
3. Select **DEF gauge**.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM STATUS

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle maintenance**.
3. Select **DEF level**.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID CONSUMPTION

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption but could be more under extreme conditions such as heavy towing.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	22.4 L (4.9 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
AdBlue® HAMJ-M99C130-xx	WSS-M99C130-A

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level

is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display.

Note: When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

Note: If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is that noise after switching off the engine?

- When you switch off the engine the selective catalytic reduction system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle

WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power your vehicle.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features to protect battery life.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices we recommend in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

With Charge Scheduling you can improve the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit. We recommend to set your preferred charging times to start at least 2-3 hours after your typical plug in time. This allows the battery to cool before charging begins. Additionally, setting the maximum charge level to be less than 100% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort features. This is not only warm or cool the cabin but also condition the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

DC Charging

Frequent use of DC charging could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan.

Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 0°C (32°F) and 45°C (113°F) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

Plug in your vehicle when temperatures reach the freezing point to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle

Storage State of Charge

You can increase the battery life by maintaining your state of charge below 100%. When you park your vehicle for an extended period of 30 days or more, we recommend your battery be at an approximately 50% state of charge. Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

Note: *To achieve this state of charge for storage, you can drive your vehicle down to 50% and set a charge limit for your location.*

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.



WARNING: Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.



WARNING: Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



WARNING: Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not

operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F). Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F). Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could cause damage to the charging equipment or cause personal injury or death.



WARNING: This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.



WARNING: High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT OVERVIEW

Public Charge Cord

Your vehicle comes with a public charge cord located under the passenger seat or safely secured and clipped in the cargo area.



You can charge your high voltage battery with the public charge cord at a public AC charge station that has no cables attached. See **Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord** (page 223).

A charge wall box can be purchased separately as an accessory to utilize the public charge cord at home.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	Type 2
Voltage (PHEV)	230 V
Voltage (BEV)	230–400 V
Maximum Current (PHEV)	16 amps max continuous
Maximum Current (BEV)	32 amps max continuous (per phase)
Phases (PHEV)	1
Phases (BEV)	1-3
Frequency	50Hz

Specification Type	Specification Value
Power (PHEV)	3.5 kW max
Power (BEV)	Vehicle 11kW max, Public charge cord 22 kW max
Cable length	5–10 m (16–33 ft)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m

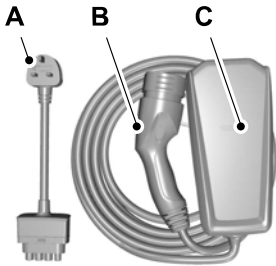
Universal Home Charge Cord (if

Equipped)

You can charge your vehicle's high-voltage battery using a standard household outlet with the universal home charge cord. See **Charging at Home** (page 218).

The universal home charge cord can be purchased separately as an accessory. It has a low power connector to use with a 230V outlet. A high power connector can also be purchased separately. Connector type varies by market.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



- A Connector.
- B Coupler.
- C Control Box.

You must plug the connector into the control box first. Then plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug into the vehicle charge port.

The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the control box and dedicated wall outlet.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion causes a longer charge session or faults.

Note: Follow the installation instructions provided with the charger.

Note: We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.

Note: Use the correct connector for the appropriate market in which you are charging your vehicle.

Note: If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.

Note: The universal home charge cord will not charge and give a fault indication, if ground is not present.

Note: Plug the connector for the universal home charge cord directly into the wall plug receptacle. Do not plug the universal home charge cord into any form of extension cord.

Note: If the wall bracket is not used for mounting the charging equipment, plug the charging equipment into an outlet closer to ground.

Note: Handle the coupler with care. Do not drop the coupler. The coupler and the cable should be mounted to the wall when not in use.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	IEC
Voltage	230 V
Maximum Current	16 amps max continuous
Frequency	50Hz
Power draw when idle	< 2 Watts
Power draw when charging	< 4 Watts
Cable length	6.1 m (20 ft)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Specification Type	Specification Value
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m

Universal Home Charge Cord Auto-Restart

Auto-restart helps make sure that your vehicle is charged and ready for use when needed. A charge could be interrupted if errors are detected. Charging resumes once the error is no longer detected. The red indicator illuminates during an error condition.

The exception to the immediate auto-restart is when the interruption is due to a charger ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) event. The charger attempts to restart 15 minutes after a (GFCI) event. After the fourth attempt to restart, the charger shuts down and the red indicator stays on.

If the fault persists, do not continue to try to charge your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer.

MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure you wrap the universal home charge cord after charging. Store the universal home charge cord in the storage bag supplied with the universal home charge cord when not in use.

Note: Do not hold the universal home charge cord by the power cable. Hold the complete unit and carefully place back in the storage bag.

Note: To remove the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.

CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners or solvents as this could damage the universal home charge cord. Do not place stress on the charger cables. If the unit overheats, remove the universal home charge cord from direct sunlight.

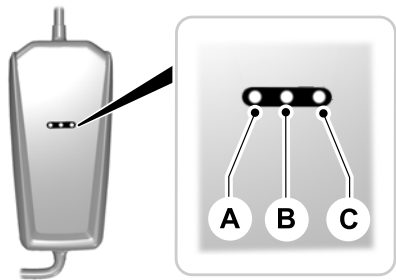
SAFETY FEATURES

The charger includes the following safety features to protect against the risk of electric shock:

- Service ground check: The charger constantly checks for the presence of a service ground connection. If the service ground ever fails, the charger's red indicator illuminates and shuts down power to the vehicle.
- Thermal event sensor: Charger module senses out-of-ordinary thermal events and decreases charging current or shut the unit down if required.
- GFCI protection: The charger has a ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) reaction system to protect against electric shock. If the charger module detects an output ground fault, it shuts down power to the output cable and the red indicator illuminates.
- Insulation: The charger module, connector, cable assembly, and charge coupler are completely insulated, no exposed live parts, to protect against electric shock.
- Unintentional disconnection: The charge coupler is designed to minimize unintentional disconnection. A pilot signal wire in the cable and charge coupler eliminates the possibility of electric shock when not connected to a vehicle or if an unintended disconnect occurs during a charge. Disconnection during charging is safe.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT INDICATORS



- A Amber fault indicator
- B Blue status indicator
- C Red trouble indicator

Note: When first plugged into a wall outlet the amber, blue and red indicators blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. After, the blue indicator turns off then back on. This cycle happens twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.

Unpowered

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord is not powered.

Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Ensure the connector is fully inserted into mobile power cord. Ensure the plug is not severely degraded. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging.

No action required.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Standby

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	ON	OFF	The mobile power cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the mobile power cord is not charging the vehicle.

If you expect the mobile power cord to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Check and adjust your charging time preferences in the on screen display. If your vehicle is still not charging, contact your authorized dealer.

Startup and Rebooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	ON	ON	The mobile power cord is recovering after encountering an error.

Universal home charge cord is powering up or recovering after an error. If the mobile power cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the issue persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Reduced, Internal Issue

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area.

Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Reduced, AC Plug Or Wall Outlet

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
BLINK	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating of the connector or the wall outlet.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. Ensure the connector is fully seated. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. Have a licensed electrician check for missing ground, utility under or overvoltage. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

User Troubleshooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	ON	There is an internal fault in the mobile power cord that cannot be recovered.

Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	BLINK	There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered.

Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact your authorized dealer about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your dealer.

Ground Leakage Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	PULSING	Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path.

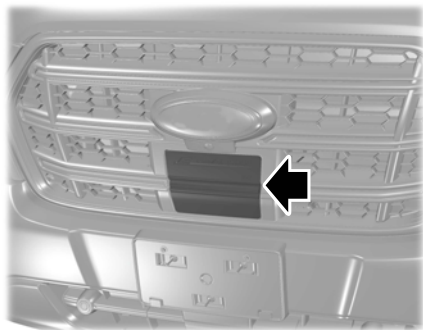
Note: When plugging into an unfamiliar wall outlet, let the vehicle charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator illuminates if it is not charging. The unit turns off if the breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) is tripped. You can view your vehicle charging status remotely via the Ford Pass app.

LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT CHARGE PORT

The charge port is on the front of the vehicle.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

To open, press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.



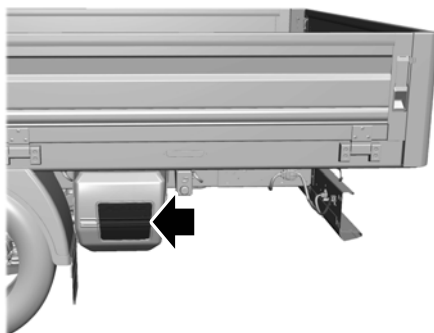
Note: Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

Alternative Charge Port Location

If your vehicle has chassis cab body style, you could have your charge port located behind the rear left wheel.

Note: In this case, do not try to open the front charge port door, as it is welded shut.

To open, press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.



Note: Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

Note: Do not step on the charge port assembly as it could damage the charge port.

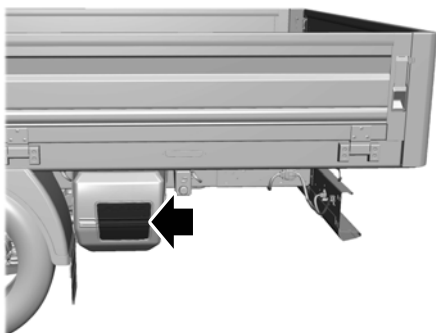
LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT - VEHICLES WITH: REAR CHARGE PORT

If your vehicle has chassis cab body style, you could have your charge port located behind the rear left wheel.

Note: In this case, do not try to open the front charge port door, as it is closed permanently.

To open, press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



Note: Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

Note: Do not step on the charge port assembly as it could damage the charge port.

CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the state of charge is:

- When zone A is pulsing, the state of charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When zone A illuminates, and zone B is pulsing, the state of charge is between 20-40 percent.
- When zones A and B illuminate and zone C is pulsing, the state of charge is between 40-60 percent.

- When zones A, B, and C illuminate, and zone D is pulsing, the state of charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When zones A, B, C, and D illuminate, and zone E is pulsing, the state of charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the state of charge is 100 percent.



Note: When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly illuminated in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then A, B, and C light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to charge settings or charge station actions.

Note: If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is On. If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, then you can turn it Off. Locate the charge port light under the vehicle settings on your in-vehicle touchscreen.

There are three charge port indicator light colors, which indicate a specific action:

White is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in and unplugging.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.

Amber is used to indicate charge faults.



Note: Charging faults are identified by the color amber on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the universal home charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.

Note: If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator illuminates solidly in an amber color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charge coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your dealer.

Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or universal home charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes amber continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens check the universal home charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.

AC CHARGING

CHARGING AT HOME

Charging through a standard household outlet with the universal home charge cord.

Universal home charge cords are optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.



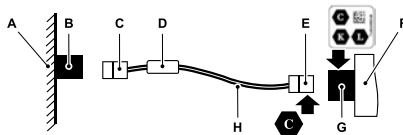
AC charging is the preferred method of charging, if your vehicle is capable of both AC and DC charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE - The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

You must unwrap the universal home charge cord completely before charging.

When using the universal home charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

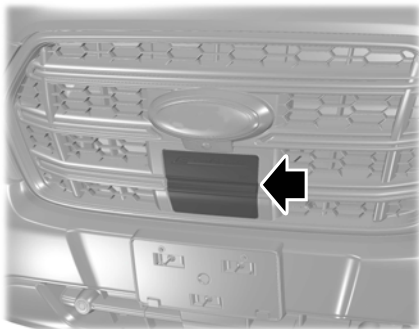


- A Mains.
- B Socket Outlet (Household).
- C Plug.
- D Control box.
- E Charge coupler.
- F Vehicle.
- G Charge port receptacle.
- H Universal home charge cord.

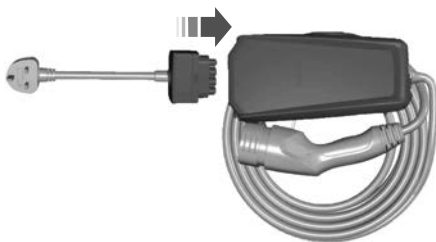
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.



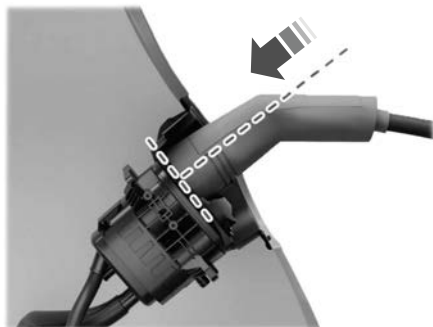
2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



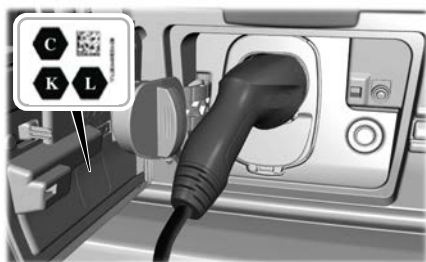
3. Select the appropriate connector for the wall outlet you will use and plug the connector into the universal home charge cord control box.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until it clicks. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion will cause a longer charge session or faults.

4. Plug the connector into the wall outlet.
5. Confirm that the universal home charge cord's LEDs illuminate.
6. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



Stopping Charging



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Note: If charging for your vehicle fails, please contact the Customer Relationship Center. To ensure superior service, please take note of the serial number when contacting customer support.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

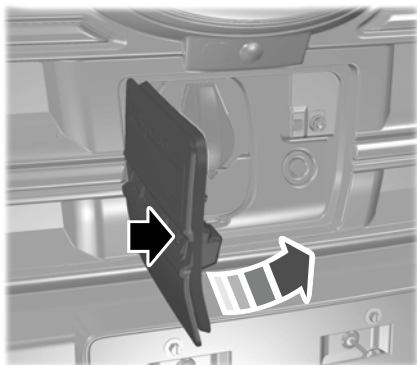
Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING IN PUBLIC

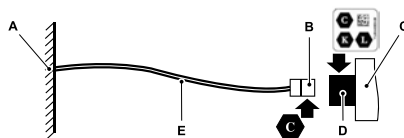
Charging at an AC charge station with cables attached.



AC charging is the preferred method of charging, if your vehicle is capable of both AC and DC charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

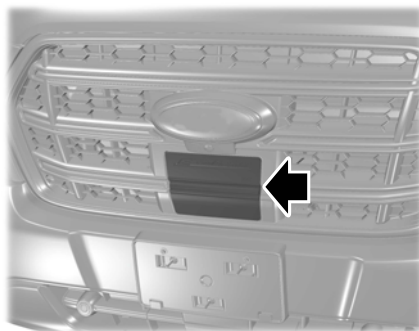
When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A AC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.

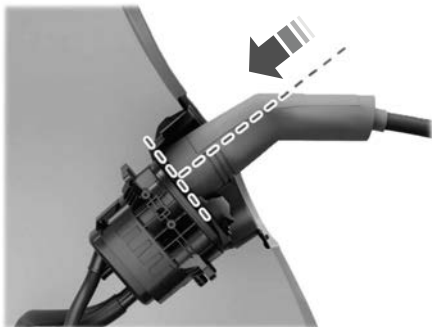


2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

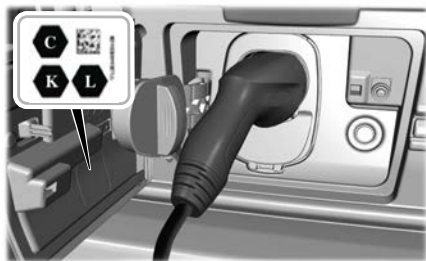
Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

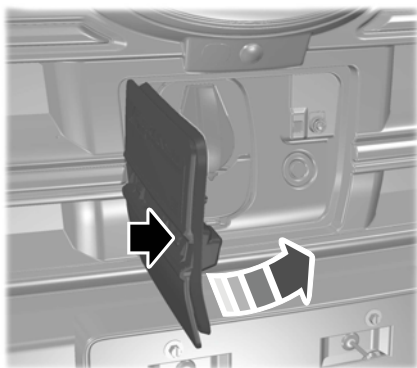
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING USING YOUR PUBLIC CHARGE CORD

Charging at an AC charge station without cables attached or at a wall box.

Charge wall boxes are optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

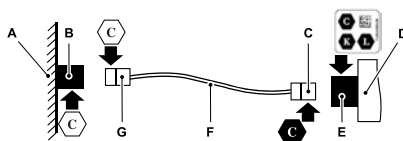


AC charging is the preferred method of charging, if your vehicle is capable of both AC and DC charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.

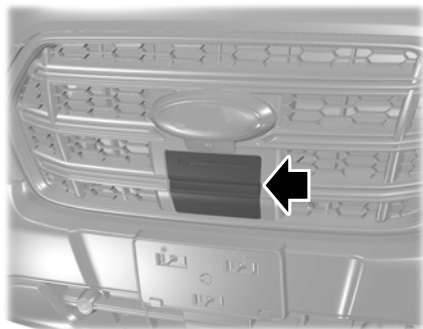


- A AC charge station.
- B Charge station port.
- C Vehicle charge coupler.
- D Vehicle.
- E Charge port receptacle.
- F Public charge cable.
- G Charge station charge coupler.

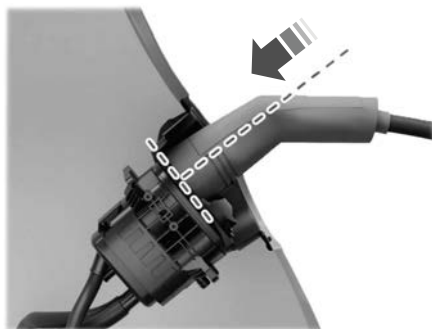
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate charge station port.



4. Plug the charge station side coupler into the charge station port.

Note: To insert the coupler, firmly grasp the handle and push into the charge station port.

5. Plug the vehicle side coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

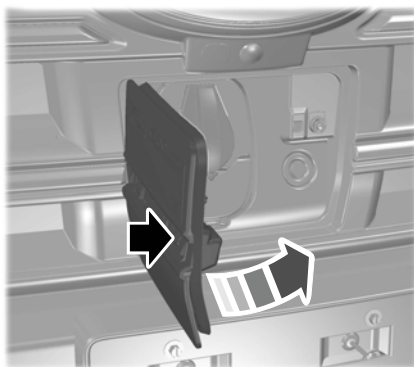
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

DC CHARGING



DC charging allows you to charge the vehicle's high voltage battery in significantly less time than the standard charge method. You can charge on the go before the battery has exhausted all of its power, or when traveling using the trip planner as part of your vehicle app.

We recommend ending DC charges at 80% state of charge.

In cold temperatures, you may notice that DC charging takes longer when the ambient temperature drops below 10°C (50°F). Shutting off climate control or reducing climate control temperature and fan settings for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging allows the battery to warm up and improve the charging rate.

For the convenience of DC charging and time, there is a different fee structure depending on the charging station and network you choose.

Note: The system could reduce DC fast charging rate to preserve the battery. This is based on battery temperature, battery state of charge and battery health.

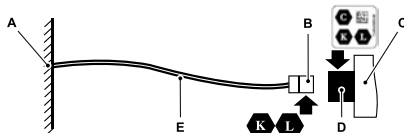
Note: When the temperature is below freezing, fully turning off cabin heat for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging could significantly improve the charging rate.

Note: Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

Note: The system could reduce the DC charging rate to maximize the life of the battery.

To charge the high-voltage battery at a charge station:

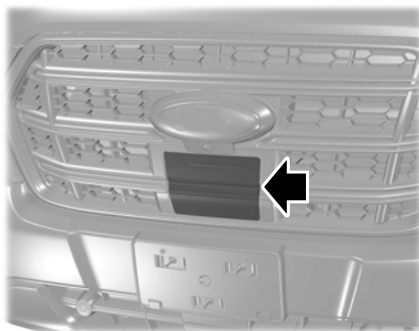
When using charge station with cables attached, choose the charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A DC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

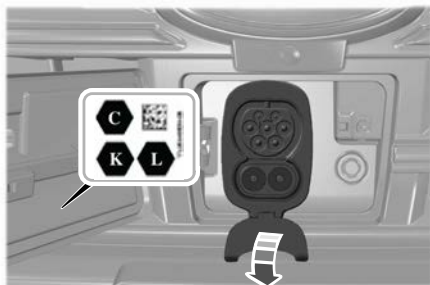
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

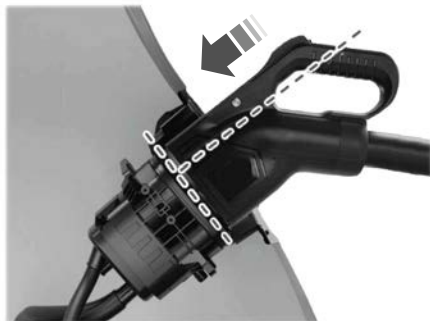


2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



3. Open the dust cap cover on the charge port to expose lower connectors.



4. Select the appropriate DC charge station coupler.
5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When the charge coupler is properly engaged, the light ring illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: The vehicle monitors battery health and may take actions including, but not limited to, reducing the DC fast charge rate to protect the battery hardware from damage, and to maintain battery health.

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Stopping Charging

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.



2. Close the dust cap cover.

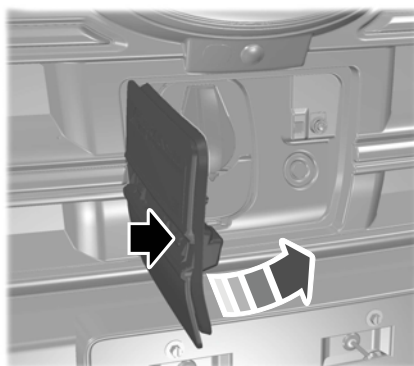
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



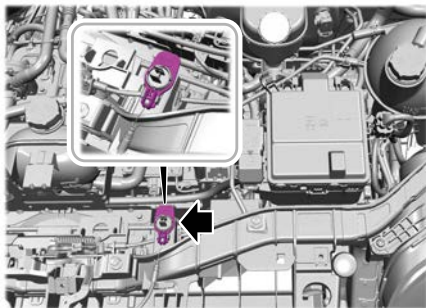
3. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT CHARGE PORT

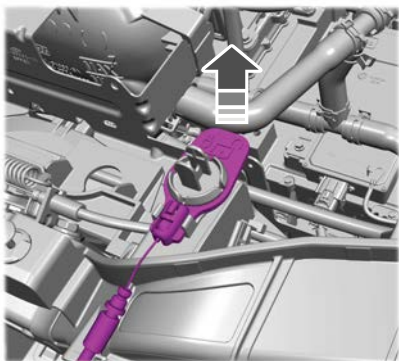
In the event that your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler after pressing the unlock button or through the vehicle access menu, you can manually release it.

1. Switch your vehicle off.
2. Open the hood.

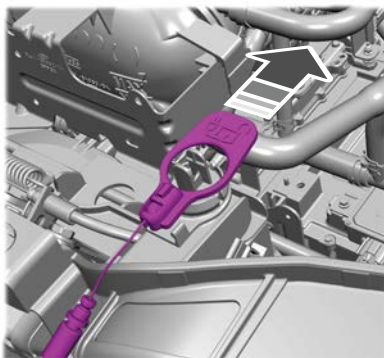
Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



3. Locate the yellow manual release ring.



4. Pull the manual release ring upward to detach from grommet.



5. Pull the manual release ring in the direction shown.

Note: Only a light effort is required. The pull distance is approximately 5 cm (2 in).

6. Press the latch on the charge coupler and remove it from the vehicle charge port.
7. Reinstall the manual release ring to the grommet.

Note: Make sure the cable is not twisted.

8. Close the hood.

Note: The next time you start your vehicle or plug in to charge, the locking mechanism re-engages and the manual release cable resets.

Note: If the issue persists, have your vehicle checked.

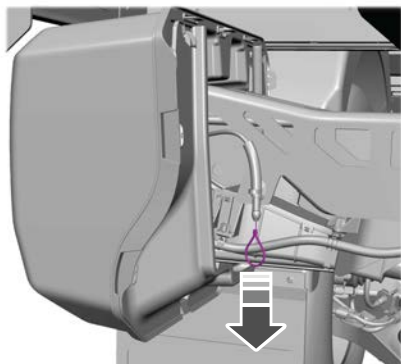
CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE - VEHICLES WITH: REAR CHARGE PORT

In the event that your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler after pressing the unlock button or through the vehicle access menu, you can manually release it.

1. Switch your vehicle off.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

2. Locate the yellow manual release ring on the back of the rear charge port assembly.



3. Pull the manual release ring in the direction shown.

Note: Only a light effort is required. The pull distance is approximately 5 cm (2 in).

4. Press the latch on the charge coupler and remove it from the vehicle charge port.

Note: The next time you start your vehicle or plug in to charge, the locking mechanism re-engages and the manual release cable resets.

Note: If the issue persists, have your vehicle checked.

CHARGING SETTINGS



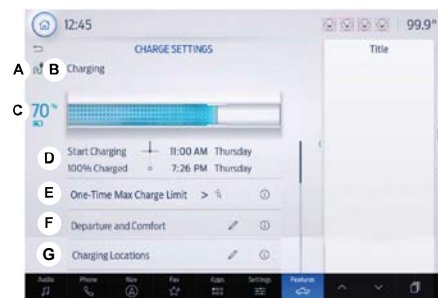
You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a max charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up on the touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

To view your charge settings:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press Charge Settings on the touchscreen.

Charge Settings Screen



- A Charging status icon.
- B Charging status.
- C High voltage battery state of charge.
- D Charging time information.
- E One-time max charge limit.
- F Departure and comfort settings.
- G Charging locations.

Charging Status Icons

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.



Not charging due to a fault.



Not currently charging.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



Charging.



Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

Charging Status

Shows the present state of the charging system.

Charge Status	Description
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your vehicle settings. You must plug your vehicle in prior to the start time to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings.
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the FordPass app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Fast charging	The vehicle is plugged into a DC Fast Charge station and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Charge Status	Description
Charging Station Malfunction	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charging station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charging station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charge station.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Charging Time Information

When charging, the start and estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the start and end times display based on known charging infrastructure.

Note: *Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.*

One-Time Max Charge Limit

Select to set a one-time max charge limit.

To temporarily adjust the charge level at which charging stops, you can set a one-time max charge limit which only applies to your next charging session. If the vehicle is already plugged in, the one-time max charge limit applies to the current charging session. The one-time max

charge limit expires after you unplug the charge cord or cancel the limit on the touchscreen. The vehicle then reverts to your saved charging location max charge setting or system default if not at a saved charging location.

Note: *If connected to a DC fast charger and charging has stopped, you must unplug and plug back in for a new one-time max charge limit to be applied.*

Departure and Comfort



Press the edit button for departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle can use your charging time preferences to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Note: By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy is needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.

Note: You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.

Departure and Comfort Setup

Follow these steps to set departure and comfort level preferences.

Note: *Departure and comfort settings do not apply to DC fast chargers.*



The edit button for departure and comfort setup is on the charge settings screen.

1. Press the edit button for departure and comfort.
2. Select a time.

Note: *Two time settings show for each day of the week on the departure times schedule screen.*

3. On the departure times settings screen, set your desired time, cabin comfort level and days of the week to repeat.
4. Press save.

Note: *Your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen.*

5. Press back to return to the main charge settings screen.

Note: *The next departure time and cabin temperature display.*

Note: *Cabin conditioning comfort level may vary depending on whether you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power could be used in addition to the charging power to heat the cabin.*

Charging Locations



Press the edit button to set preferred charging times for a specific charging location.

Your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: *Your vehicle charges during your preferred time windows. Charging outside these windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge limit set for this location by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in.*

Note: *You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.*

Charging Location Setup

Follow these steps to set time and charge level preferences for a charging location.

Note: *Charging location settings do not apply to DC fast chargers.*



The edit button for charging locations is on the charge settings screen.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

1. Press the edit button for charging locations.
2. On the charging locations screen select add new location.

Note: You can also edit settings for previously saved locations listed on this screen.

3. Select an address from the list of recent charge locations.
4. Confirm that this is the location you want to save with the help of the map view.

Note: Depending on the GPS location, the address on the navigation may not precisely match up with your charging location. Confirm on the map that the pin is in the expected location.

5. Edit the location name if desired and set a maximum charge limit.

Note: The name of locations cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.

Note: Charging stops when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge limit setting.

6. Press continue to schedule.



7. Set preferred charging times for weekday and/or weekend by pressing and dragging along the 24 hour time wheel.

Note: You can set up to two blocks of time (charge windows).

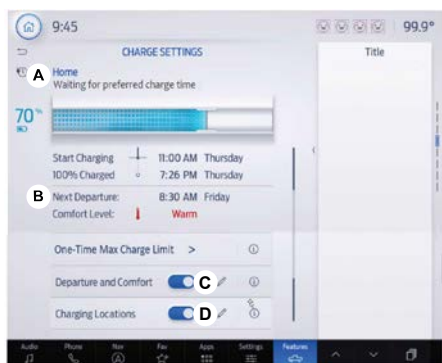
Note: Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

8. Press continue once you have your desired time settings for weekday and weekend.
9. The summary screen displays your settings for this location. Press save or press back to change your settings.

Note: Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings screen displays the location name. The charging times are based on your preferred time settings for that location plus the next departure time.

Note: Reaching your max charge limit by your next departure time is always the priority. When charging time preferences are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging immediately after plugging in. Charging pauses when the rest of the charge can be done within the preferred charging windows.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



- A Charging location name.
- B Next departure time and cabin temperature.
- C On/Off switch for departure and comfort.
- D On/Off switch for charging locations.

Charging Location Name

Displays when your vehicle is at a saved charging location.

Next Departure Time and Cabin Comfort Level

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

On/Off Switch for Departure and Comfort

This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times off and on. Switching off departure and comfort does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

On/Off Switch for Charging Locations

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved charging location. Use this switch to turn your settings off and on for this location only. Switching off for this location does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

Note: If the charging locations switch is off, the vehicle begins charging to 100% once plugged in.

USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The vehicle app allows you to do the following:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.
- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.
- Initiate a charge session automatically at Plug and Charge capable charge stations.
- Control your Connected Charge Station remotely.
- Override charge preferences and starting and stopping charging.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS



Identifier symbol visible on vehicle cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Vehicle coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Charge station port, public charge cord coupler.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	50 volt to 500 volt



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	200 volt to 920 volt

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Vehicle plugged in? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure you unplugged your charge station and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Plug in to Maintain 12V Battery	Indicates that the high voltage battery can no longer maintain 12V high voltage battery due to its low range. Plug in your vehicle to charge the high voltage battery and maintain the 12 volt battery at a healthy state.
Charge Station Fault See Manual	Your plugged in vehicle detects a fault with the charge station or charging cord. Please check if the charge coupler is inserted correctly, and contact the charger station operator for assistance.
Charge Station Commu- nication Error Contact Station Provider	Your plugged in vehicle cannot communicate with the charging station. Please contact the charger station operator for assistance.

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does my vehicle not charge with the mobile power cord?

- Ensure you properly connect the connector and control box. Unplug the charge coupler from the vehicle and unplug the connector from the wall outlet. Then check the connector to be sure that the connector is connected properly into the mobile power cord control box. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet or a different connector if you have one available. If the problem persists, contact an authorized EV certified dealer.

Why does my vehicle have a hum or fan noise when charging?

- A hum or a fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. This is a normal operation as your vehicle is keeping the battery cool while charging.

Why does my information display say that the vehicle is charged when it is still pulling power from the charging source?

- In order to keep your battery at the current level, a small amount of power needs to be sourced from the wall to power the vehicle electronics. Once the vehicle is shut down, the vehicle will stop drawing power.

Manual Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

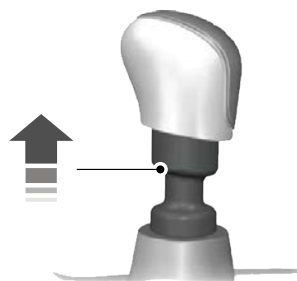
Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.



CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 251).

CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the electric parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 257).

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P). See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 248).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

LOW (L) - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

In low (L) your vehicle decelerates more noticeably than in drive (D) when the accelerator pedal is released.

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 357).

LOW (L) - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

In low (L) your vehicle holds low gears.

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 357).

MANUAL (M) - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 247).

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 357).

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



The transmission selector is on the center console.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Rotate the outer ring to select a position.

Note: The position illuminates on the transmission selector.

3. Press the low (L) or manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

Note: Your vehicle cannot shift from drive (D) to park (P) with a clockwise rotation. Your vehicle cannot shift from park (P) to drive (D) with a counter-clockwise rotation.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

P R N D L

Note: The position could illuminate on the selector.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

P R N D M

Note: The position could illuminate on the selector.

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P) - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Note: Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake.

Note: If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Press the low (L) or manual (M) button.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

Note: You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P) - 10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.



WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

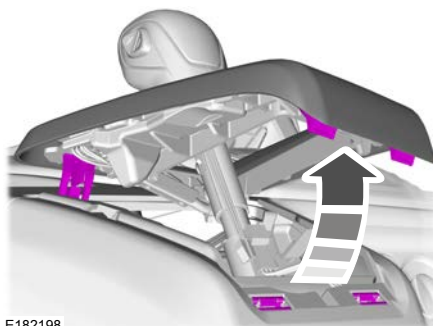


WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park

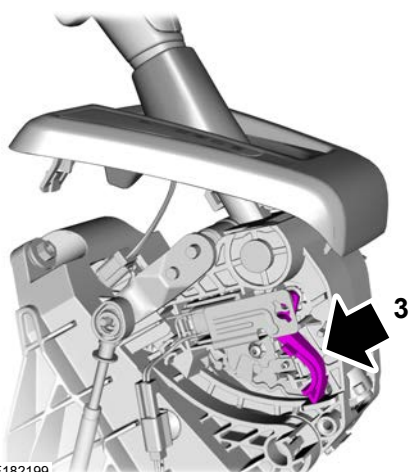
1. Apply the parking brake.



E182198

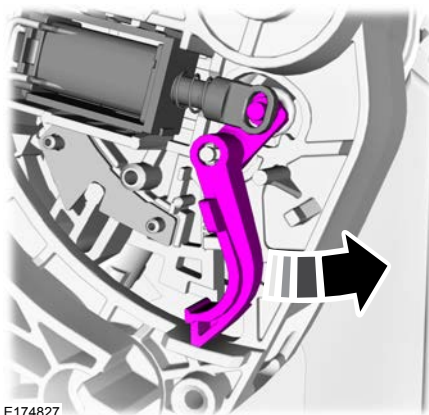
2. Remove the selector cover using a plastic wedge or pry tool.
3. Sit in the drivers seat.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.

Automatic Transmission



E182199

5. Locate the selector override lever.



E174827

6. Push the selector override lever toward the rear of your vehicle and hold it there.
7. Shift into neutral (N).
8. Release the selector override lever.
9. Install the selector cover.

10. Release the parking brake.

11. Release the brake pedal.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS-1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/ 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if any of the following occur:

- You switch your vehicle off before shifting into park (P).
- You open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

Automatic Transmission

USING PROGRESSIVE RANGE SELECTION - 10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Progressive range selection gives you the ability to lock out gears from the automatic shifting range. This could provide you with an improved driving experience by reducing transmission shifts, for example, in slippery conditions or steep slopes.

With the transmission in drive (D), press the minus (-) button to begin to switch the feature on.

Press the minus (-) button again to continue locking out higher gears. Beginning with the highest gear, the instrument cluster will indicate the current gear and highest gear available. For example, press the minus (-) button twice to lock out 10th and 9th gears.

Note: The instrument cluster will indicate the current gear and highest gear available.

Press the plus (+) button to unlock gears to allow the transmission to shift to higher gears.

Note: The transmission automatically shifts within the gear range you select.

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

SHIFTING USING THE PADDLE SHIFTERS - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear.

Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.

Note: Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.

Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.



Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Hold the right paddle for a few seconds to turn off the feature manually.

Note: The feature switches off if neither paddle is pulled within a short period of time.

Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Automatic Transmission

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 357).



Shift to manual (M) to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Shift into drive (D) to switch the feature off.

SHIFTING USING THE BUTTONS ON THE SELECTOR LEVER - 10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.

Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads, or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 357).

Shift to manual (M) to switch the feature on.

- Press the upper (+) button to upshift.
- Press the lower (-) button to downshift.
- Shift to drive (D) to switch the feature off.

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

HOW DOES TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE WORK

Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off. For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

Note: You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with power on.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Note: Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 248).

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE LIMITATIONS

This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Automatic Transmission

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

ENTERING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: An instructional message appears.

5. Press the low (L) or manual (M) button.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Note: The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.

EXITING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/ 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt and exit the driver seat.

Note: Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving** (page 174). See **Powering Off** (page 180).

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park could not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver seatbelt is incorrectly fastened, for example, behind the body of the driver.
- The driver seat sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Transmission not in park message appears after you shift out of park (P).

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Transmission Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
Press brake to unlock selector lever	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.

All-Wheel Drive

HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling.

There is further information on driving in unique driving conditions. See **Driving Hints** (page 364).

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds that can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice, proceed with care.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

The all-wheel drive system is not intended for use with mismatched tires.

Different tire sizes between the front and rear axles can cause system damage.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD Off	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function.

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.



2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 492).

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn-out. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

There is an electrical motor sound after I press the brake pedal or activate the electric parking brake. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are from the brake system operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 441).*

Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission, Vehicles With: Conventional Mechanical Parking Brake

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Park brake applied	You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Brake - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: Conventional Mechanical Parking Brake

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Park brake applied	You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is next to the steering wheel on the lower part of the instrument panel.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when you shift into park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 241).

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is next to the steering wheel on the lower part of the instrument panel.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

Electric Parking Brake

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Note: *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

Pulling Away When Towing a Trailer Uphill

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Fasten the driver seatbelt.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



The red warning lamp illuminates when the electronic parking brake is applied or for a few seconds on start up.

If it remains illuminated or flashes when the electronic parking brake is not applied, it indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the brakes. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake released	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake applied	The electric parking brake is applied.

Reverse Brake Assist

WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R). Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h (1–7 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Reverse Brake Assist

Note: The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Switch **Reverse Brake Assist** on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

Note: If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

Note: The default setting is on in some regions.

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays when the system applies the brakes and remains on for a few seconds.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Displays when a related subsystem or feature error has occurred. Make sure the rear view camera and side cameras are clean and not obstructed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist malfunction	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 260).
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert** (page 331).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **What is the Rear Parking Aid** (page 269).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 269). See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 332).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill start assist not available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Close the driver door and fasten your seatbelt before you switch the system on.



Press the button on the instrument panel.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: Make sure you switch the system off before using an automatic car wash.

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

Note: Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 257).

Note: The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) while pressing the brake pedal.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.

Auto Hold



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF

**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation.
If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

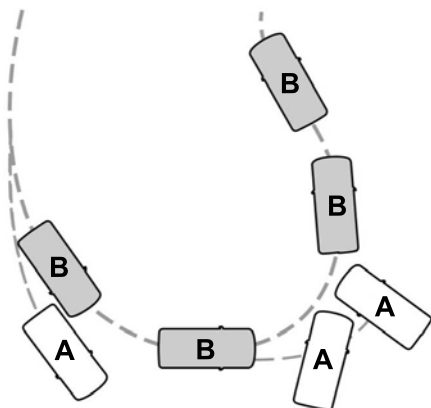
TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Stability Control

WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



- A Without stability control.
- B With stability control.

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the

electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: The system might detect a connected trailer, if so, it turns parking aid off.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free of debris. Accumulation of dirt, snow or ice over the sensors can affect the accuracy of the system.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the parking aids off.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button and use the menu to set the system on mute.

The system can also be muted using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

Parking aid visual indication remains on and can not be turned off when the transmission is in reverse (R)

Parking Aids

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 18 km/h (11 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

SIDE PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. To reset the steering wheel angle information, drive straight for at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, the system detects obstacles within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, the system detects obstacles within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS



The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

Message	Details
Parking aid malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

Message	Details
Check rear Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

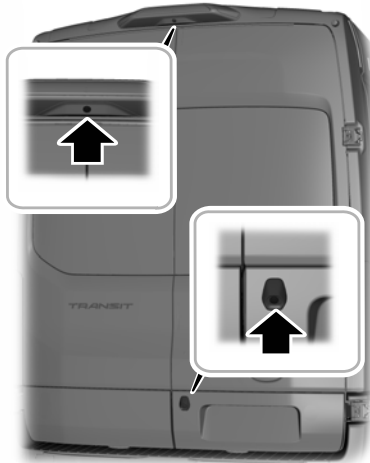
REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to the rear door ajar or damage to the rear of your vehicle.

Rear View Camera

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

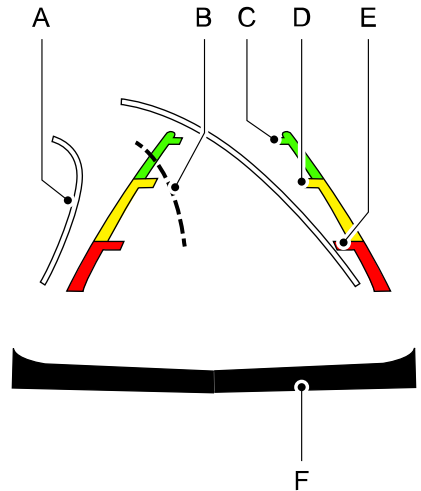


E254267

The rear view camera is below the central high mounted stop lamp or on the rear cargo door.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Rear View Camera

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



You can switch this feature on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

360 Degree Camera

WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system provides visibility around your vehicle in parking maneuvers such as:

- Centering in a parking space.
- Obstacles near your vehicle.
- Parallel parking.

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

Note: Use caution if a door is ajar. The camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is below the central high mounted stop lamp or on the rear cargo door. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

360 Degree Camera

Front View Camera

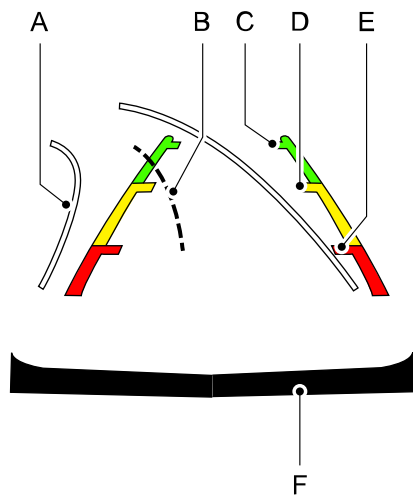
The front view camera is in the front grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the exterior mirror. It provides a video image of the area on both sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.

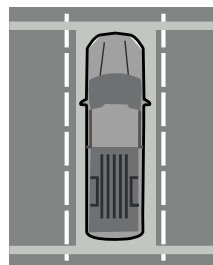
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

360 Degree Camera

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

Note: *The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.*

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), the front and 360 degree views display when the button is pressed.

When in reverse (R), the rear and the 360 degree views display.

Note: *The 360 degree camera view turns off when the vehicle speed increases, except when in reverse (R).*



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



Zooms in on the 360 degree image.

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press to access the different camera views.



Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.



Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.



Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.

Delivery Assist

WHAT IS DELIVERY ASSIST?

The system is designed to automatically secure your vehicle when you stop for a delivery.

HOW DOES DELIVERY ASSIST WORK?

When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P), and exit your vehicle, delivery assist automatically locks the doors, and turns the hazard flashers on.

If you stop for less than 10 minutes, the vehicle automatically restarts when you press the brake pedal. The hazard flashers automatically turn off when you shift into gear.

If the delivery stop lasts for more than 10 minutes, the hazard lights continue to flash but the automatic restart is suppressed. You have to press the brake and power button the restart the vehicle.

DELIVERY ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive, stop and park with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

DELIVERY ASSIST LIMITATIONS

If the vehicle is parked for more than two hours, the system turns off but the hazard lights continue to flash. You have to restart the vehicle and operate the hazard lights manually. Delivery Assist has to be reactivated.

SWITCHING DELIVERY ASSIST ON AND OFF



Press the button on the instrument panel to set delivery assist into standby mode. Press again to switch delivery assist off.

DELIVERY ASSIST SETTINGS

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Delivery Assist**.

You can perform multiple settings from this menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

DELIVERY ASSIST INDICATORS



Illuminates gray when you switch the system on.

Illuminates green when the system is active.

Delivery Assist

DELIVERY ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

DELIVERY ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Low battery Delivery Assist not available	Battery charge low, you cannot use delivery assist. Drive the vehicle or plug the vehicle in to recharge the battery.
Delivery Assist unable to activate hazard lights Apply manually	Delivery assist is unable to switch on or off the hazard lights. Switch on the hazard lights manually.
Delivery Assist not available See manual	Delivery assist has an internal fault and cannot operate. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cruise Control

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press the buttons to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The set speed appears in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

SET-

Press the button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Cruise Control

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch the system on.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

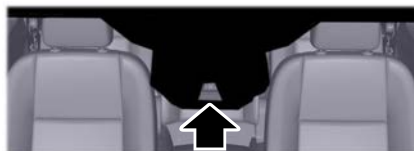
WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

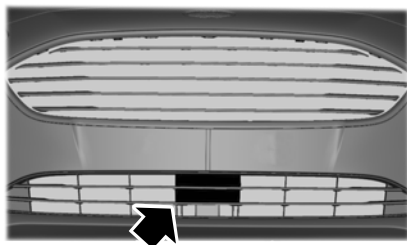
WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



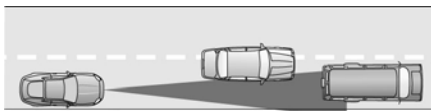
The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Adaptive Cruise Control

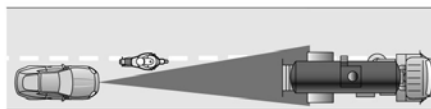


Detection Issues Can Occur:

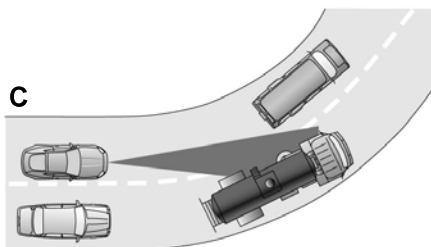
A



B



C



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 299).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

- A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 282).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in active mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby or active mode, or switch the vehicle off.

Note: You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Drive to the required speed.

SET+ Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



E249552

A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h (10 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

SET- Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Adaptive Cruise Control

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET-

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



E249552

Adaptive Cruise Control

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.



If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



Adaptive Cruise Control

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

Note: *The set speed also cancels if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal**.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

Note: *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

Note: *The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 284).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 294).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.
- The steering system detects your hands on the steering wheel.

- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.

Note: If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.

Note: If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 285).

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.

Adaptive Cruise Control

- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 293).

Note: *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Switching Lane Centering On



Press the button on the steering wheel.



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Make sure both systems are active.

Switching Lane Centering Off



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternatively:



Press the button on the steering wheel. A message appears on the instrument cluster display prompting you to confirm.

Note: *Lane centering turns off each time you switch your vehicle off.*

Note: *Lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 293).*

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Press **Lane Centring Assist**.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 294).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *The system could detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Adaptive Cruise Control

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, and your hands are on the steering wheel, a tone sounds, and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system quickly activates and releases the brakes, and slows the vehicle down to low speeds while maintaining steering control when lane markings are present. If no lane markings are present, then the vehicle will come to a stop. Hazard lights will be automatically activated by the system.



If your vehicle starts to slow down after system cancellation, you must take full control of the vehicle. To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation, press and release the resume button or press the accelerator pedal.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

Note: If your vehicle slows down due to your inactivity twice within a key cycle, the system disables. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Blue status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane centring assist not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST

HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 296).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition** (page 343).

Note: The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 508). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.



WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



WARNING: The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 284).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 301). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

Note: *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



WARNING: The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Switch **Predictive Speed Assist** on or off.

Adaptive Cruise Control

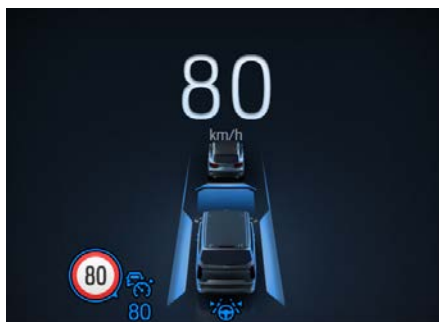
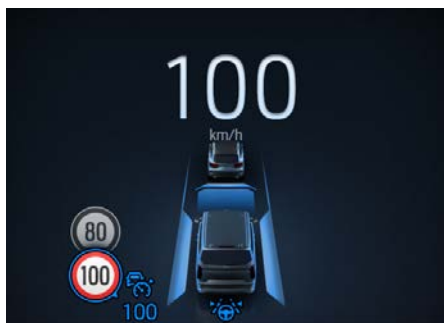
PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

Speed sign indicator



When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

Road geometry indicator



When the system detects a curve, turn, roundabout, or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Road geometry indicator symbols



Left curve.



Right curve.



Left intersection.



Right intersection.



Left roundabout.



Right roundabout.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

Note: The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility.
Adaptive cruise not available	Displays when the system is not available.
Adaptive cruise malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Norm. cruise act. Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

Drive Mode Control

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



Press the button on the instrument panel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

As a secondary option:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.

DRIVE MODES - DIESEL

ECO



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

NORMAL



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: If you switch off your vehicle in a mode other than Normal, the system prompts you to return to this previous mode when you next start your vehicle. If you ignore the selection prompt, the system defaults to Normal mode.

SLIPPERY



Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

TOW/HAUL



Vehicle settings suited for towing or hauling.

TRAIL - AWD



Vehicle settings suited for driving on unpaved roads.

Note: Auto-start-stop is disabled when you select this mode.

DRIVE MODES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

ECO



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

NORMAL



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SLIPPERY



Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

Drive Mode Control

Note: *If you switch off your vehicle in **Slippery** mode, the system prompts you to return to this mode when you next start your vehicle. If you ignore the selection prompt, the system defaults to **Normal** mode.*

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WHAT IS ECO COACH

Eco coach is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently.

HOW DOES ECO COACH WORK

Eco coach provides feedback through the instrument cluster display about your driving behaviour.

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure.*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

HOW DOES INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL WORK

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as four colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

Note: *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

Efficient Drive Mode

WHAT IS EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

Efficient drive mode is a predictive coach that uses the vehicle navigation data. It provides predictive route information to help you drive more efficiently by indicating when you can release the accelerator pedal.

HOW DOES EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE WORK



When you approach a speed limit or a road event, the symbol displays in the instrument cluster display with a second symbol indicating the type of event.

As soon as you take your foot off the accelerator, the vehicle adjusts the brake energy recuperation and the speed. The vehicle takes into account the selected driving profile and the distance to the event.

The system does not use the vehicle brake. When you are driving downhill, the system also cannot sufficiently brake the vehicle in all driving situations.

Note: When the system is active, Efficient Drive Mode can increase deceleration even without a displayed message, thereby adapting the speed to a detected vehicle ahead.

Note: You can override Efficient Drive Mode at any time by accelerating.

Note: : This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 508). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch **Eco advice** on or off.

DISPLAYING THE EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**

TRIP SUMMARY

HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as five colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for your driving behavior, acceleration, deceleration, speed, gear shifting and compliance score during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

Note: The compliance score assesses how well you follow the efficient drive mode indicator.

Note: Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch the engine off.

Efficient Drive Mode

4. Press the **OK** button.

EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE INDICATORS



It illuminates grey when the system recommends you to decelerate.

It changes color when you start to decelerate.

The additional display ring next to the efficient drive mode indicator can provide information about speed limit, intersection, freeway ramp, roundabout, stop sign, slope, curve or crosswalk.

Local Hazard Information

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 507).

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Status Information**.
3. Select **Local Hazard Information**.

Speed Limiter

HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

LIM

Press to set the system in standby mode. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

SET-

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to resume the set speed limiter.

Speed Limiter

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

 It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 508). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF



Press to set the system in standby mode. The system prompts you to set a speed or show the detected speed limit as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

Intelligent Speed Limiter

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

Note: The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

Note: If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+ You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

SET-

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

 Press to cancel the speed limiter and set it in standby mode. The symbol in the instrument cluster display appears gray.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

 Press to resume the limiter. The system sets the speed limit to the detected maximum speed limit when it resumes. The symbol in instrument cluster display appears green.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the center display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Intelligent Speed Limiter** off.

Note: *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 60 km/h (37 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

Lane Keeping System

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.

Note: The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Mode**.
5. Select a setting.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the two modes on the touchscreen:

- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.

Note: The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Alert Intensity**.
5. Select a setting.

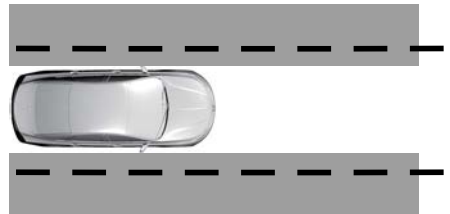
Note: This setting does not affect the aid mode.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK

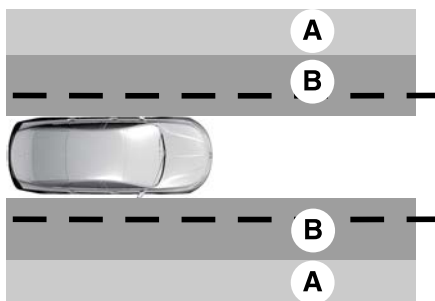


Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

Note: When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

Note: The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.



A Alert.

B Aid.

Note: The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Aid Mode and alert combines both, aid mode and steering wheel vibration alert.

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



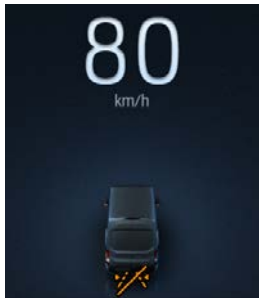
When you switch the system on and the system detects lane markings, a white indicator and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Keeping System



When the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 60 km/h (35 mph), and the system does not detect lane markings, a gray indicator and gray lane markings appear.

When the vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (35 mph), a gray indicator appears and lane markings do not appear.



When you switch the system off, a yellow indicator with a strikethrough appears.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Note: *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Lane Keeping System

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS

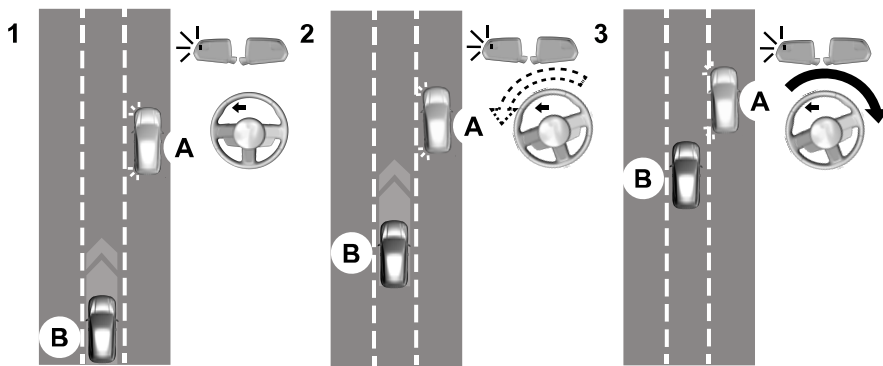


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 321).

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

Note: When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 324).

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 324).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

Lane Keeping System

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 324).

Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS

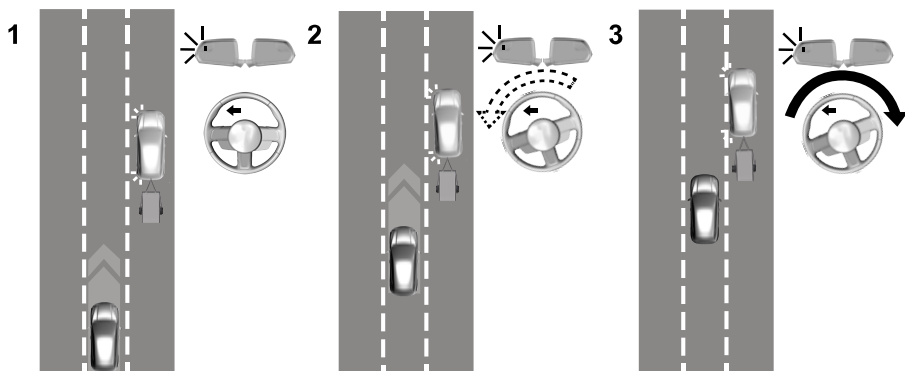


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist countersteers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator

flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 321).

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m (33 ft) to your vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage (page 324).
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

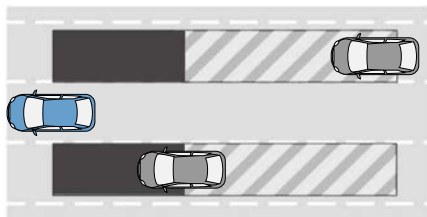
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

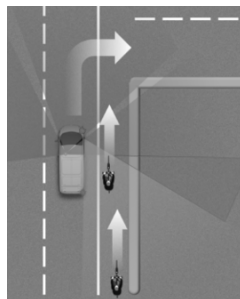
Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



At low speed the system is designed to detect cyclists and other objects that are in the blind spot zone while you are driving straight and during a turning maneuver. The system also functions when your vehicle is stationary.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information System



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R) and when the handbrake is engaged.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when you start your vehicle.

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R) and when the handbrake is engaged.*

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

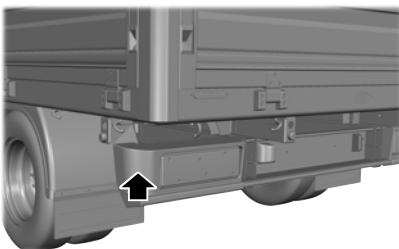
1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Blind Spot Information System** on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Blind Spot Information System

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM



The sensors are located in the rear lamp on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM KIT



The sensors are located at the rear on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

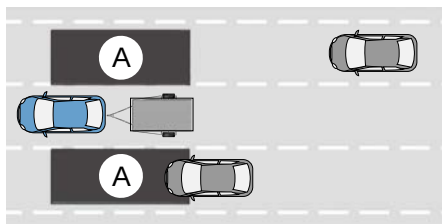
Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

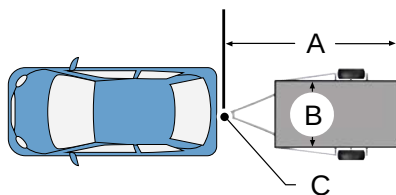
Note: The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



A Trailer length.

B Trailer width.

C Trailer hitch.

Blind Spot Information System

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Add trailer** and follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Press **Trailer BLIS** and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: *Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.*

Note: *If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.*

SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Select Active Trailer**.
4. Select an available trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

MOVING OFF INFORMATION SYSTEM

The system is designed to detect pedestrians or cyclists in the front blind spot of your vehicle and warns you of a potential collision. The system uses a camera behind the interior mirror and front radar sensors to warn you of a potential collision.

The system activates if a pedestrian or a cyclist enters the front blind spot of your vehicle and any of the following occur:

- When you shift into forward gear from standstill.
- When you drive straight at a low speed below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Precautions



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

Blind Spot Information System



WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle sensors have limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when the sensors are blocked.

Note: The system is not designed to detect animals.

Moving Off Information System Indicators



It illuminates white in the instrument cluster display when the system detects pedestrians or cyclists close to the front of your vehicle. It illuminates red in the instrument cluster display and an audible warning sounds when the risk of the collision increases.



If the system detects a fault a yellow indicator with a strikethrough appears in the instrument cluster display.

Moving Off Information System – Information Messages

Message	Details
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING



It illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Exit Warning

WHAT IS EXIT WARNING

Exit warning uses radar sensors to alert you to traffic objects approaching your open door.

HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

Exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear and cross into the exit warning zone. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle and extend slightly past a fully open door.



Note: The system cannot detect animals, slow moving pedestrians or any type of stationary object.

EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.



WARNING: Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning remains on for about 3 minutes after turning your vehicle off. Exit warning turns off immediately when locking the doors. Exit warning will inform you when it turns off and operates in any gear position.

Exit Warning

Note: Do not use exit warning as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.

Note: The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by closing the doors automatically.

Note: The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.

Exit Warning Alert

Exit warning is designed to provide a visual and audible alert during an exit when an occupant opens any door and a traffic object is approaching on the same side.

EXIT WARNING INDICATORS

 When exit warning detects an approaching traffic object on one side, the corresponding alert indicator in the exterior mirror is illuminated. If exit warning alert is active, the same alert indicator flashes. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 325).

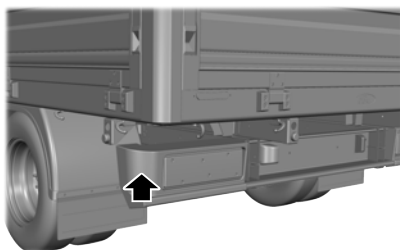
In addition to the mirror indicator there is also visual indicator in the touchscreen noting what side a traffic object has been detected on.

SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

You can switch off the exit warning system by using the touchscreen.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM



The sensors are located in the rear lamp on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

Exit Warning

LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM KIT



The sensors are located at the rear on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

EXIT WARNING – TROUBLESHOOTING

EXIT WARNING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right side: check surroundings before exiting	Right exit warning alert is active.
Left side: check surroundings before exiting	Left exit warning alert is active.
Exit Warning turning off Exit safely	Displays if the exit warning system turns off/shuts down.
Exit Warning System malfunction	Displays if the exit warning system detects any system error.

Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The system does not apply the brakes if you override it by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

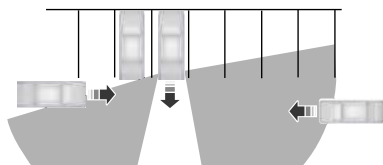
WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM KIT

The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

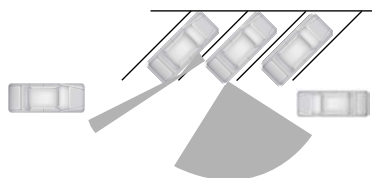
HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start your vehicle and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Cross Traffic Alert



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

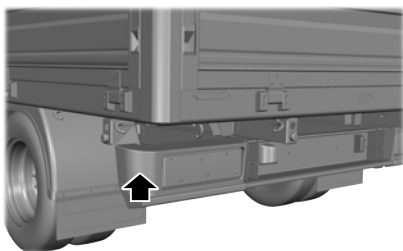


CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Cross Traffic Alert



The sensors are located in the rear lamp on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM KIT



The sensors are located at the rear on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Cross traffic alert with trailer coverage allows the system to continue operating with a trailer or trailer hitch attachment.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the center display.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and direction indicators appear in the center display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: If the direction indicators do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – WARNING LAMPS



If the system malfunctions, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Message	Details
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross traffic alert Applying brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM KIT

Message	Details
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of direction indicators when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects other road users and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above. Pedestrian and cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Details
Alert	When activated, a warning flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic emergency braking	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above 30 km/h (19 mph).

Pre-Collision Assist

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph).

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 65 km/h (40 mph).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.



WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast

Pre-Collision Assist

moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

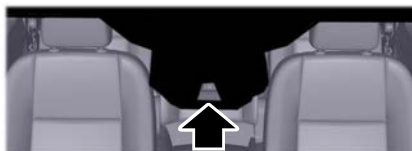


WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

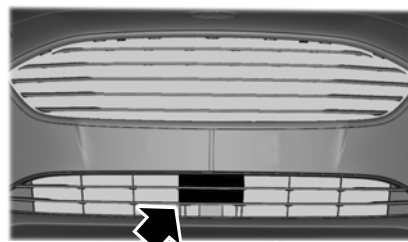
Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

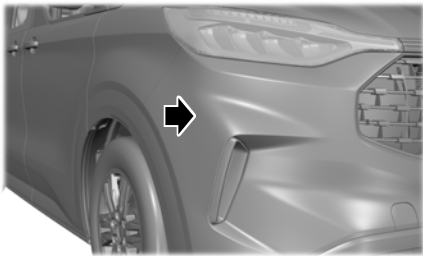


The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Pre-Collision Assist



The radar sensors are behind the front grille below the license plate and behind the front bumper on the left and right sides.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

DISTANCE INDICATION

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

Note: The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft) .	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft).	0.6-0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (55.8 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

Pre-Collision Assist

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Automatic Emergency Braking** on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 337).

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Pre-Collision Assist

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.*

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

- 1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
- 2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
- 3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
- 4. Switch **Evasive Steering Assist** on or off.

Note: *Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: *No action is needed if the warning lamp illuminates without a corresponding information message. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 337).*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. Check the list of possible causes and actions in the table below. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist

The following table lists possible causes and details for when a blocked sensor message could display.

Cause	Details
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

Speed Sign Recognition

WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit.

HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: Speed sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 508). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, the speed limit appears in the instrument cluster display.

Speed Sign Recognition

Note: If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored speed sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Driver Alert

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: The system turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.

RESETTING DRIVER ALERT

You can reset driver alert by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

Driver Alert

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an issue, for example, the camera

is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region not all messages are available.

Traffic Sign Recognition

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit, overtaking and right of way regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Traffic sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect traffic signs.

Map data could influence sign detection. Stored traffic sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 508). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop signs.
- Yield signs.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

Traffic Sign Recognition

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.



When the system detects an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in two stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a speed limit for vehicles with a trailer sign.

Note: If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.



When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.

Traffic Sign Recognition

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.



Press and hold the button to temporarily switch the speed warning off.

Note: The speed warning turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Chime for Speed Limit Change

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Chime for Speed Limit Change** on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Wrong Way Alert

WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

Note: Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 508). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all traffic signs and could incorrectly read signs.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

The system does not operate in some countries. We recommend that you check system availability before use.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

The system could not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Wrong Way Alert** on or off.

Wrong Way Alert

WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check driving direction	The system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Ensure you are driving in the correct direction.

Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.



WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

Load Carrying



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - BUS

Maximum Roof Load

Variant	kg (lb)
Medium-Roof.	150 (331)
High-Roof.	100 (220)

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - VAN

All Except 310M M1 Kombi With Passenger Double Seat, Second Row Seats & Third Row Seats.

Variant	Maximum Roof Load kg (lb)
Medium-Roof.	150 (331)
High-Roof.	100 (220)

310M M1 Kombi With Passenger Double Seat, Second Row Seats & Third Row Seats.

Variant	Maximum Roof Load kg (lb)
Medium-Roof.	100 (220)
High-Roof.	50 (110)

Rear Cargo Area

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

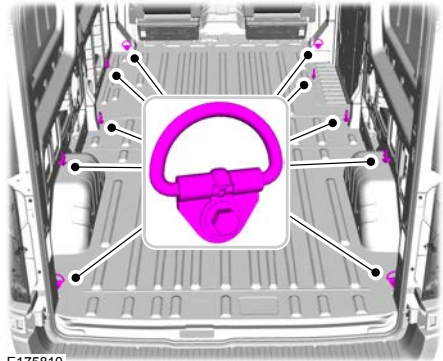


WARNING: Check the load retaining fixtures for damage before using them. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the load retaining fixtures for towing. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS



E175810

Note: The number of load retaining fixtures could vary depending on your vehicle model.

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES

Variant	Maximum Load Value
All Van	5,000 N (1,125 lb)

Connecting a Trailer

TRAILER LIGHTING CHECK



WARNING: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer light check feature allows one person to confirm that all taillights are functioning.

Perform a trailer light illumination sequence to confirm that all lights are functioning using the SYNC screen in the vehicle.

Performing the Trailer Light Check using the SYNC screen in vehicle

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Trailer Light Check**.
4. Press **Start**.
5. Follow the instructions until the lights sequence completes.

Note: *If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.*

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 363).

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft). See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 505).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 358).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weight

You can find the maximum permissible trailer weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

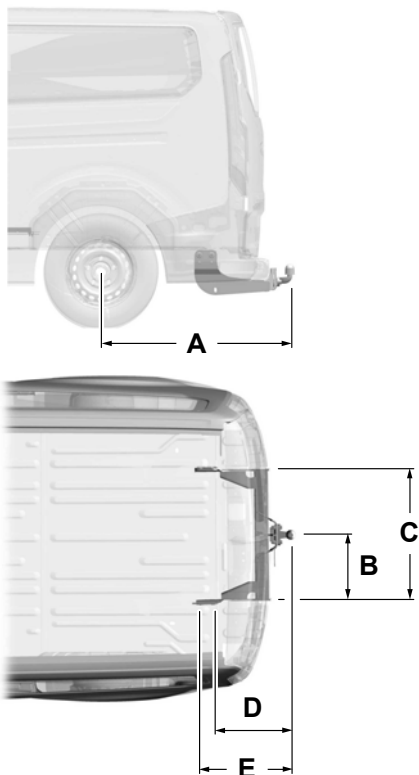
Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Powertrain	kg (lb)
2.0L EcoBlue.	112–140 (247–309)
BEV.	60 (132)

Note: You can find the maximum permissible trailer vertical weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS - BUS/KOMBI/VAN



E148831

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

Medium or Long Wheelbase

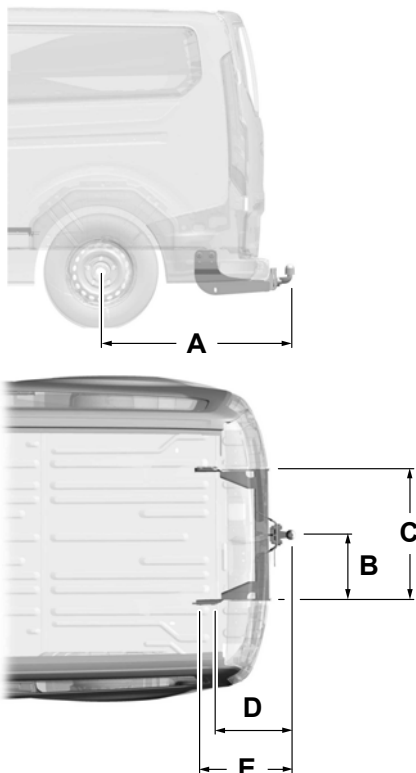
Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,344–1,381 (52.9–54.4)
B	Center of tow ball to side member.	417 (16.4)
C	Distance between side members.	839 (33.0)
D	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	619–666 (24.4–26.2)
E	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	704–741 (27.7–29.2)

Long Wheelbase - Extended Frame

Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	2,105 (82.9)
B	Center of tow ball to side member.	417 (16.4)
C	Distance between side members.	839 (33.0)
D	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	629–666 (24.8–26.2)
E	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	704–741 (27.7–29.2)

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS - CHASSIS CAB/CHASSIS DOUBLE CAB



E148831

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

Short, Medium or Long Wheelbase

Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,178 (46.4)
B	Center of tow ball to side member.	416 (16.4)
C	Distance between side members.	832 (32.8)
D	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	237 (9.3)
E	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	343.5 (13.5)

Long Wheelbase - Extended Frame

Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,735 (68.3)
B	Center of tow ball to side member.	416 (16.4)
C	Distance between side members.	832 (32.8)
D	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	237 (9.3)
E	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	343.5 (13.5)

Extra Long Wheelbase - Extended Frame

Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	2,165 (85.2)
B	Center of tow ball to side member.	416 (16.4)
C	Distance between side members.	832 (32.8)
D	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	237 (9.3)
E	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	343.5 (13.5)

Trailer Sway Control

HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer sway Reduce speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

Note: *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

Driving Hints

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 251).

BREAKING-IN

Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

Driving Hints

DRIVING IN SPECIAL CONDITIONS

DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously.

DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

Note: *Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.*

DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the information display. See **All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 250).

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER - DIESEL



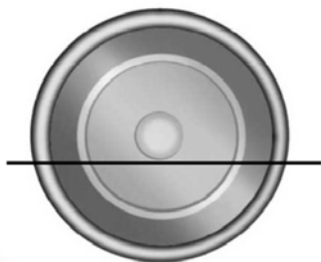
WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

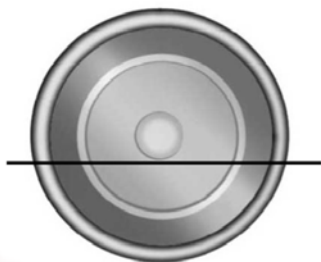
Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Driving Hints

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

ELECTRIC VEHICLE

MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

Driving in Cold Weather

Keep your vehicle charged before heading out into cold weather.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce energy needed for climate control.

Driving Hints

Note: Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.

Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle by using departure and comfort settings to warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in. By using energy from your charging source prior to your departure, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy will be needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.

Note: You can also access departure and comfort settings using the FordPass App.

Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This will help to moderate temperatures which affect performance of the high voltage battery and require energy to heat or cool the cabin.

Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan.

FLOOR MATS



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Driving Hints



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

Crash and Breakdown Information

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m (16 ft) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m (49 ft) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - DIESEL



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

Crash and Breakdown Information



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries.



WARNING: All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery



WARNING: Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approximately 0°C (+32°F).



WARNING: The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.



WARNING: A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.



WARNING: Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.



WARNING: Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.



WARNING: Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.

Note: This procedure is only for the 12 volt battery.

Note: Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is under the driver seat. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.

Note: Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.

Note: Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

Crash and Breakdown Information

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - DIESEL



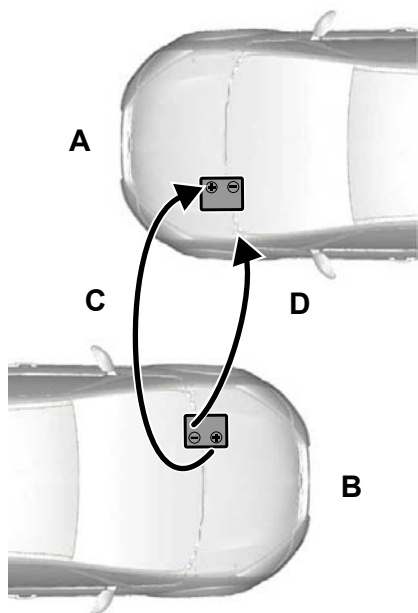
WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

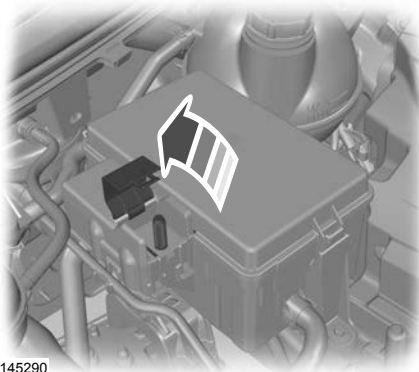


- A Vehicle with the discharged battery.
- B Vehicle with the booster battery.

- C Positive jumper cable.
- D Negative jumper cable.

Front Wheel Drive

1. Switch the ignition off and any electrical equipment.



E145290

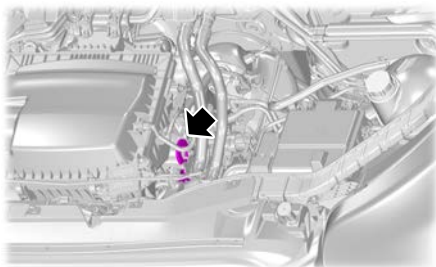
2. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For item location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Maintenance** (page 403).



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

3. Connect one end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery and the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery.

Crash and Breakdown Information

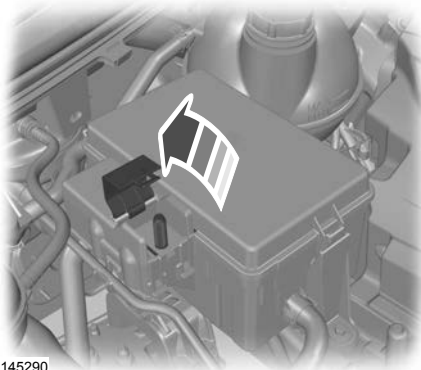


WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Connect one end of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery or to a suitable ground point and the other end to the ground point on your vehicle.

Rear Wheel Drive

1. Switch the ignition off and any electrical equipment.



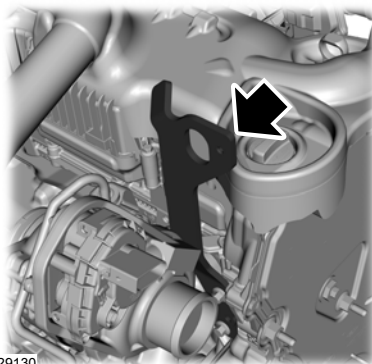
E145290

2. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For item location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Maintenance** (page 403).



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

3. Connect one end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery and the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery.



E229130



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Connect one end of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery or to a suitable ground point and the other end to the ground point on your vehicle.

Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM.

Crash and Breakdown Information

2. Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
3. When the engine starts, run the engines for three minutes before you disconnect the jumper cables.

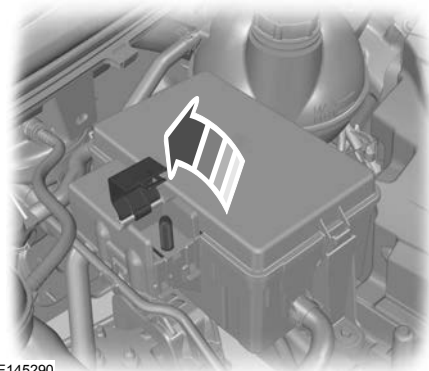
Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on before you disconnect the jumper cables. The peak voltage could cause the bulbs to fail.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

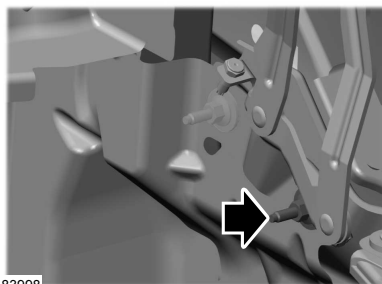
Your vehicle has a positive (+) access terminal and a negative (-) ground connection point that you can access under the hood, even though the actual battery is under the driver seat. You can jump your vehicle using these points.

The positive (+) access terminal is next to the fuse box, under a red cap. To access the positive (+) terminal, lift the red cap up.



E145290

The negative (-) terminal is a post on the driver side, near the hood hinge. It is a ground connection point. You need to remove the rubber covering first.

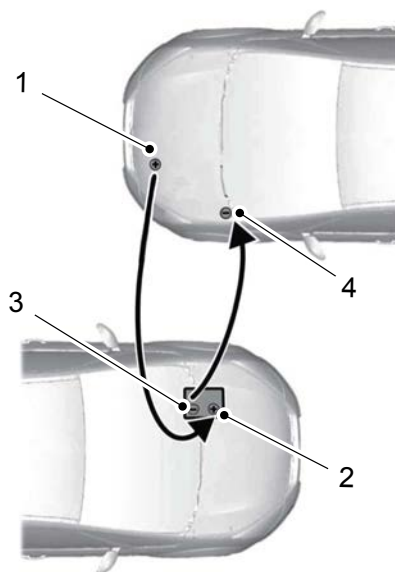


E183998



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

Note: In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.



Crash and Breakdown Information

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) access terminal of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to the ground connection point of the vehicle with the discharged battery.



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

5. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 rpms, as shown in your tachometer.
6. Switch on the disabled vehicle.
7. Once power enters the 12 volt battery it starts the disabled vehicle. Run the booster vehicle at 2000-3000 rpms for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

Note: *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF - DIESEL

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system deactivates the high voltage system if it is a battery or hybrid-electric vehicle, in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS - DIESEL



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.

4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

ACCESSING THE EMERGENCY EXIT - BUS



WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for roof racks. Never install a roof rack to your vehicle.

Break the glass with the hammer in an emergency.

RECOVERY TOWING

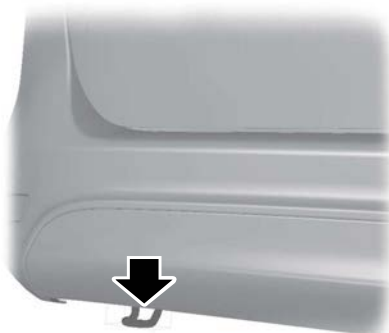
ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



E146426

Crash and Breakdown Information

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT - BUS/VAN

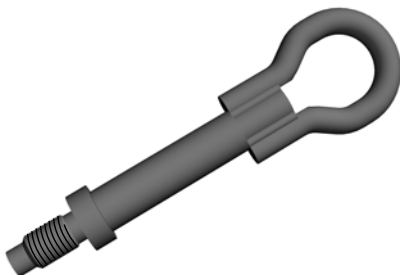


E142319

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT - CHASSIS CAB/CHASSIS DOUBLE CAB



LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye could be found:

- Secured to the floor under the passenger seat.
- Secured under the second row passenger seat.
- Inside the driver door storage compartment.
- Inside the toolkit within the front step storage compartment.

Note: You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE



WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.

Crash and Breakdown Information

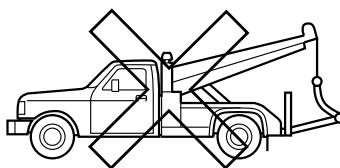
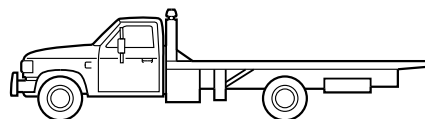
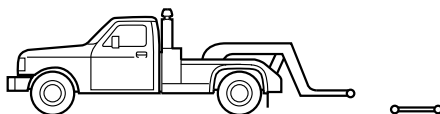


E146426

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Install the towing eye.

Note: It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

Towing your vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground. This prevents damage to the mechanical systems and vehicle.

Crash and Breakdown Information

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the front, place the rear wheels on a tow dolly.

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the rear, place the front wheels on a tow dolly.

FAIL-SAFE COOLING - DIESEL

WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

Note: *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.*

DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

Crash and Breakdown Information

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle - Diesel, Manual Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 122).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider. See **Transporting the Vehicle** (page 378).

Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the drivetrain, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch **Emergency Tow** on.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Switching Emergency Tow On

1. Properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on to accessory mode. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 180).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
5. Select **Vehicle settings**.
6. Select **Emergency Tow**.
7. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display.
8. Press and hold the brake pedal.
9. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display.

10. Release the parking brake.
11. Switch your vehicle off.

Switching Emergency Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.

3. Shift into park (P). A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display and the park (P) position illuminates on the transmission selector.

Emergency Equipment

STORING A FIRST AID KIT

You can store a first aid kit in the passenger side front door storage.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE

You can store a warning triangle in the driver side front door storage.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS



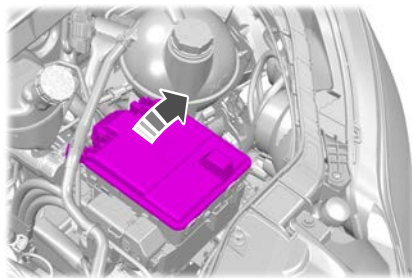
WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

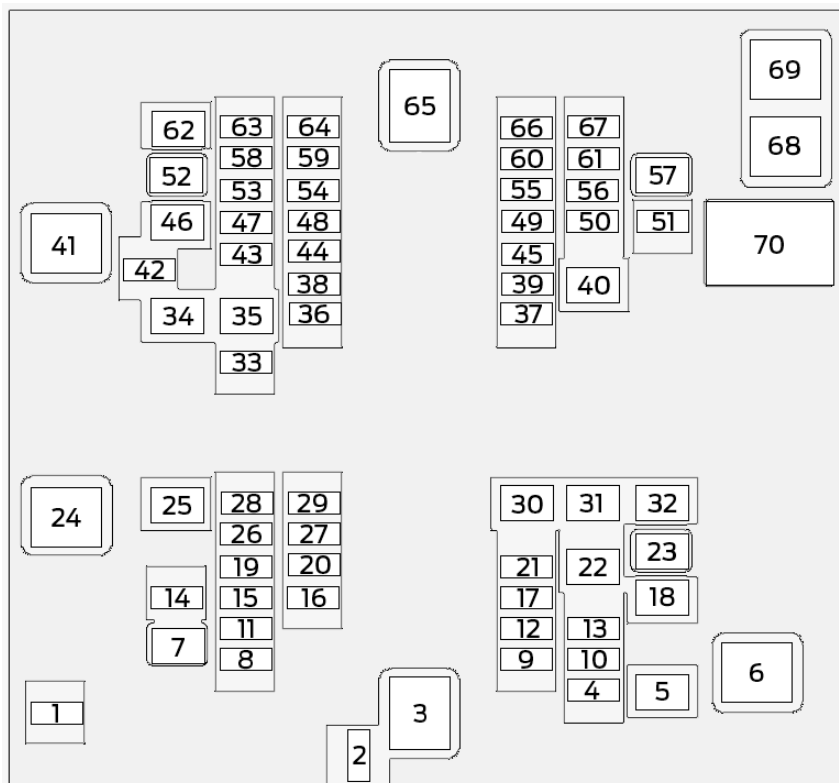
UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	20 A	Horn.
2	15 A	Power folding mirrors.
3	60 A	Anti-lock braking system control module. Electric brake boost pump.
4	10 A	Trailer park reverse lamp.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
5	40 A	Right-hand heated windscreen.
6	40 A	Rear climate control.
7	40 A	Left-hand heated windscreen.
8	10 A	Right-hand high-intensity discharge headlamps.
9	10 A	Horn. Battery back-up sounder.
10	20 A	Not used (Spare).
11	10 A	Left-hand high-intensity discharge headlamps.
12	5 A	USB port.
13	-	Not used.
14	30 A	Trailer park position lamp.
15	5 A	High voltage to low voltage direct current. Direct current converter. Power inverter.
16	-	Not used.
17	5 A	USB port.
18	30 A	Trailer tow module.
19	15 A	Not used (Spare).
20	5 A	Anti-lock braking system control module.
21	10 A	USB port.
22	40 A	Anti-lock braking system valve. Electric brake booster valve.
23	20 A	Front outlet.
24	40 A	Front blower motor.
25	40 A	Not used (Spare).
26	15 A	Not used (Spare).
27	10 A	Headlamp leveling.
28	5 A	Not used (Spare).

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
29	15 A	Not used (Spare).
30	20 A	Power point power outlet. Cigar lighter.
31	-	Not used.
32	20 A	Power point rear outlet.
33	10 A	All-wheel drive control module. Traction battery control module.
34	40 A	Transmission control module. Torque vectoring module.
35	20 A	Transmission interface.
36	-	Not used.
37	-	Not used.
38	5 A	Inverter system controller. Hybrid powertrain control module. Transmission control module. Transaxle.
39	10 A	Generator. Battery charger control module.
40	20 A	Fuel fired heater control module.
41	50 A	Cooling fan.
42	20 A	Electric cooling pump motor.
43	15 A	Fuel injector.
	20 A	High voltage battery cooling pump - Battery Electric Vehicle.
44	15 A	Transmission control module. Transaxle.
45	5 A	Keep alive power control module. Power control module.
46	30 A	Fuel pump. Fuel pump control module. Traction battery coolant pump - Battery Electric Vehicle.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
47	10 A	Engine coolant bypass. Audible vehicle alert system module.
48	5 A	Cooling fan. Heat pump - Battery Electric Vehicle.
49	15 A	Injector pump relay.
	5 A	Charge status indicator - Battery Electric Vehicle. Modular hybrid transmission - Battery Electric Vehicle.
50	15 A	Transmission control unit.
	5 A	Traction battery control module - Battery Electric Vehicle.
51	5 A	Inverter system control module. Hybrid powertrain control module.
52	40 A	Fuel filter heater. Water-in-fuel sensor. Electric vacuum pump.
53	15 A	Powertrain control module.
54	25 A	Transaxle.
	5 A	Battery energy control module - Battery Electric Vehicle.
55	15 A	Reductant pressure line.
	10 A	Hybrid powertrain control module.
56	5 A	Dosing module.
	7.5 A	Second charger - Battery Electric Vehicle.
57	25 A	Cooling fan.
	20 A	Transmission interface.
58	20 A	Powertrain control module. Electric vehicle control module.
59	20 A	Dosing control unit. Glow plug module.
	15 A	Heat pump - Battery Electric Vehicle.

Fuses

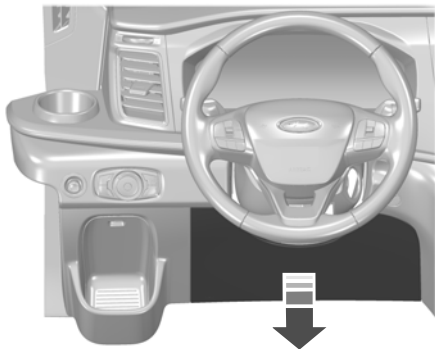
Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
60	15 A	Reductant tank heater. Contactor relay output.
	10 A	Hybrid powertrain control module.
61	-	Not used.
62	30 A	Starter motor.
63	20 A	Powertrain control module.
64	20 A	Powertrain control module.
65	60 A	Cooling fan.
66	10 A	Hybrid powertrain control module.
67	-	Not used.
68	50 A	Cooling fan.
69	50 A	Cooling fan.
	50 A	Cooling fan.
70	-	Plug in relay.

Fuses

INTERIOR FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

Driver Compartment Fuse Box



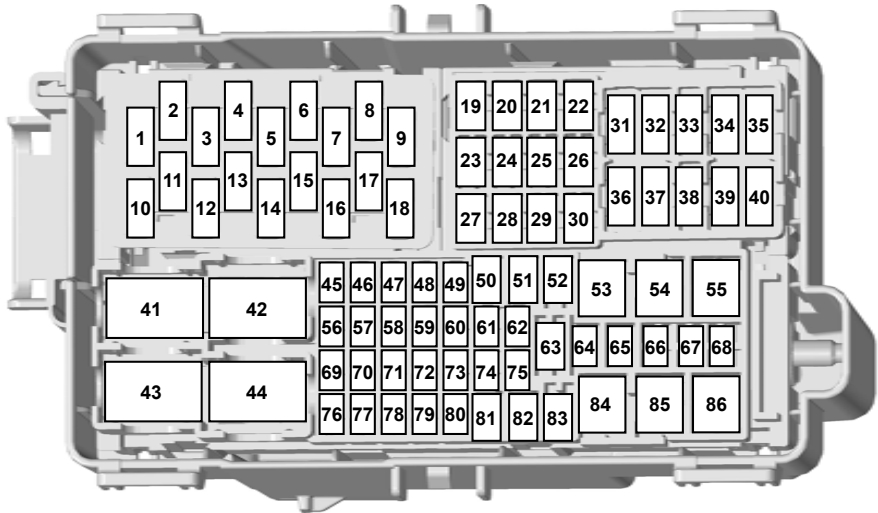
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

Driver Compartment Fuse Box



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	USB port.
2	-	Not used.
3	5 A	USB port.
4	-	Not used.
5	-	Not used.
6	-	Not used.
7	-	Not used.
8	-	Not used.
9	10 A	Heated exterior mirrors.
10	-	Not used.
11	-	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
12	-	Not used.
13	-	Not used.
14	-	Not used.
15	-	Not used.
16	5 A	Rain sensor.
17	-	Not used.
18	20 A	Rear window wiper motor.
19	-	Not used.
20	-	Not used.
21	20 A	Heated rear window.
22	20 A	Heated rear window.
23	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
24	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
25	-	Not used.
26	25 A	Windshield wiper motor.
27	-	Not used.
28	-	Not used.
29	-	Not used.
30	30 A	Power running boards.
31	-	Not used.
32	-	Not used.
33	-	Not used.
34	-	Not used.
35	5 A	Trailer tow module.
36	-	Not used.
37	-	Not used.
38	-	Not used.

Fuses

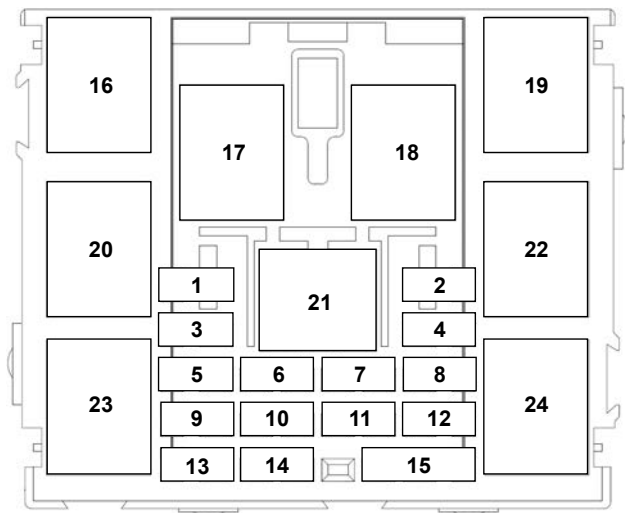
Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
39	-	Not used.
40	-	Not used.
41	-	Not used.
42	40 A	Starter relay.
43	-	Upfitter relay.
44	40 A	Starter relay.
45	10 A	Upfitter interface module.
46	15 A	Trailer tow module.
47	5 A	Fuel fired heater.
48	-	Not used.
49	10 A	Brake pedal switch.
50	-	Not used.
51	-	Not used.
52	30 A	Driver power seat.
53	60 A	Battery.
54	60 A	Power inverter.
55	50 A	Body control module.
56	-	Not used.
57	-	Not used.
58	10 A	Connector camper body interface. Upfitter interface. Secondary junction box.
59	10 A	Rear climate control. Front view camera. Rear view camera. Adaptive cruise control module. Blind spot information system.
60	10 A	Reductant dosage control module.
61	7.5 A	Tachograph.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
62	15 A	Enhanced cut off relay system module.
63	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
64	-	Not used.
65	-	Not used.
66	10 A	Enhanced cut off relay system. Camper. Load shed relay.
67	-	Not used.
68	-	Not used.
69	5 A	Steering wheel module.
70	-	Not used.
71	10 A	Heated seats.
72	10 A	Heated seats.
73	20 A	Adaptive front lighting module. Headlamp leveling.
74	-	Not used.
75	20 A	Engine compartment fuse box.
76	10 A	Power sliding door control switch.
77	5 A	Headlamp switch.
78	10 A	Power sliding door latch switch.
79	-	Not used.
80	5 A	Starter relay.
81	40 A	Trailer tow module.
82	30 A	Power sliding door.
83	-	Not used.
84	50 A	Body control module.
85	30 A	Power sliding door.
86	50 A	Body control module.

Fuses

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



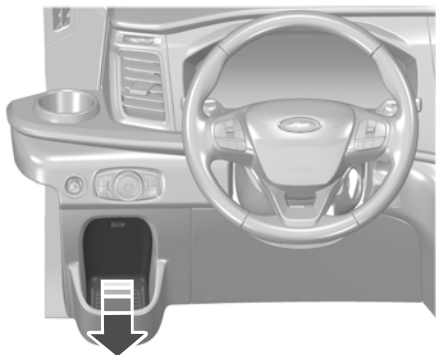
Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	40 A	Auxiliary switch 1.
2	40 A	Auxiliary switch 2.
3	20 A	Beacon switch.
4	20 A	Ignition.
5	10 A	Direction indicators.
6	-	Not used.
7	-	Not used.
8	10 A	Interior lighting.
9	15 A	Two-way radio connector.
10	5 A	Ignition.
11	10 A	Ignition.
12	20 A	Touchscreen.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
13	5 A	Power mode relay.
14	5 A	Ignition.
15	20 A	Power supply.
16	20 A	Beacon relay.
17	40 A	Auxiliary switch 1 relay.
18	40 A	Auxiliary switch 2 relay.
19	20 A	Ignition relay.
20	20 A	Left direction indicator relay.
21	20 A	Smart regenerative charge inhibit relay.
22	20 A	Interior lamps relay.
23	20 A	Right direction indicator relay.
24	40 A	Auxiliary power 4 relay.

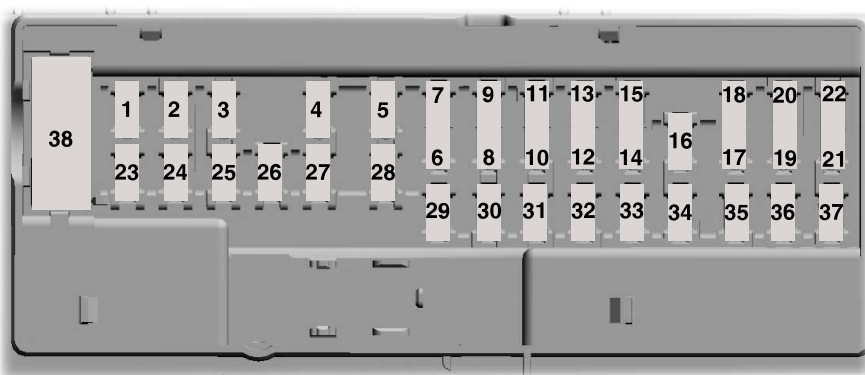
BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	-	Not used.
2	10 A	Power inverter.
3	7.5 A	Power window switch. Power exterior mirrors.
4	20 A	Not used.
5	-	Not used.
6	10 A	Anti-theft alarm horn.
7	10 A	Not used.
8	5 A	Telematics control unit module. Embedded modem.
9	5 A	Intrusion sensor. Rear air conditioning.
10	-	Not used.
11	-	Not used.
12	7.5 A	Climate control.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
13	7.5 A	Data link connector. Steering column. Instrument cluster.
14	15 A	Battery energy control module - MHEV.
15	15 A	SYNC 3 module.
16	-	Not used.
17	7.5 A	Tachograph.
18	7.5 A	Not used.
19	5 A	Battery back-up sounder.
20	5 A	Ignition switch.
21	5 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater control.
22	5 A	Pedestrian alert control module.
23	30 A	Not used.
24	30 A	Not used.
25	20 A	Driver door module.
26	30 A	Passenger door module.
27	30 A	Not used.
28	30 A	Gear shift module - battery electric vehicle. Navigation display - diesel.
29	15 A	Not used.
30	5 A	Not used.
31	10 A	Data link connector. Remote key receiver.
32	20 A	Radio. Telematics module.
33	-	Not used.
34	30 A	Tachograph. Message center. Positive temperature coefficient heater. Lane keeping system camera. Parking aid.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Steering column.
35	5 A	Not used.
36	15 A	Parking aid. Lane keeping system camera. Steering column control module.
37	20 A	Not used.
38	30 A	Power windows.

HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

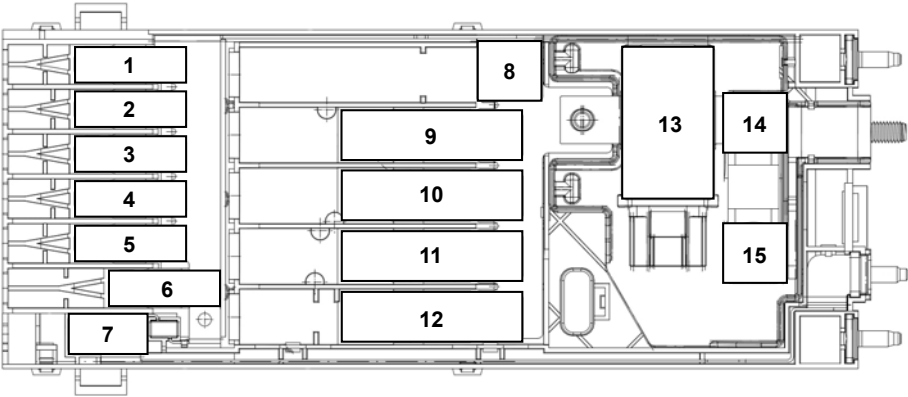
ACCESSING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

Remove the trim panel.

The high current fuse box is under the driver seat.

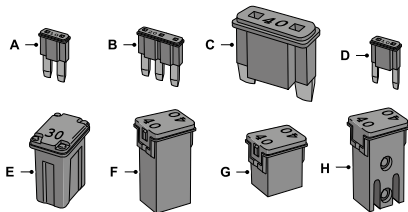
IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX



Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	125 A	Body control module.
2	80 A	Electronic power assist steering.
3	150 A	Auxiliary heater.
4	-	Not used.
5	-	Not used.
6	150 A	Passenger compartment fuse box.
7	60 A	Camper.
8	-	Battery.
9	470 A	Starter motor. Alternator.
10	300 A	Engine compartment fuse box.
11	250 A	Direct current/Direct current converter - MHEV.
12	150 A	Driver compartment fuse box.
13	-	Load shed relay.
14	180 A	Auxiliary power point 1.
15	60 A	Auxiliary power point 2.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



A	Micro 2.
B	Micro 3.

C	Maxi.
D	Mini.
E	M Case.
F	J Case.
G	J Case Low Profile.
H	Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

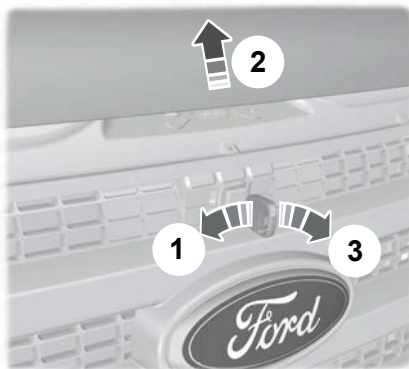
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood

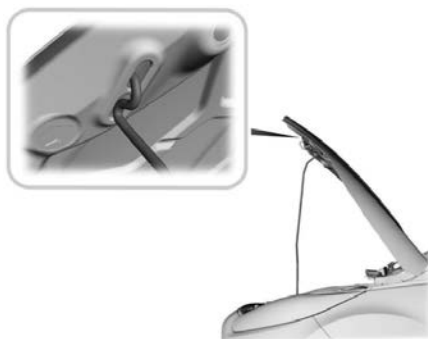


E72108

1. Insert the vehicle key into the hood lock and turn it counterclockwise.

Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Turn the key clockwise to release the hood.



E87786

Maintenance

4. Support the hood with the strut.

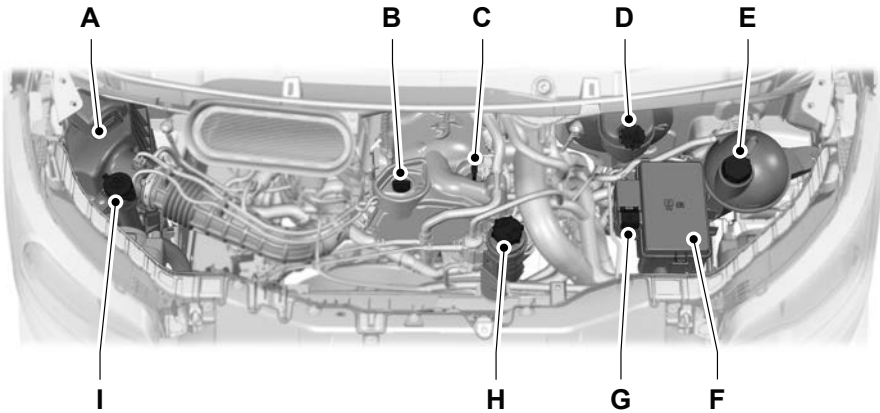
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.

2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - DIESEL, AWD/RWD/LHD

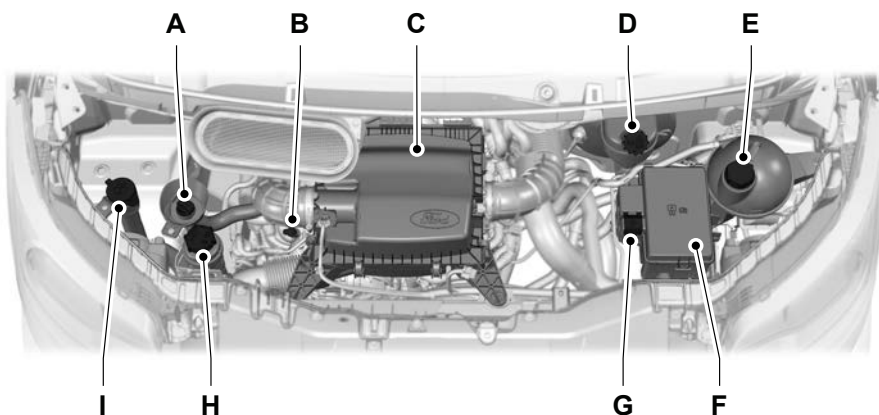


E226292

- A Air filter.
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 408).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 408).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 251).
- E Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 411).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 385).
- G Battery connection. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 372).
- H Power steering fluid reservoir.
- I Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - DIESEL, FWD/LHD

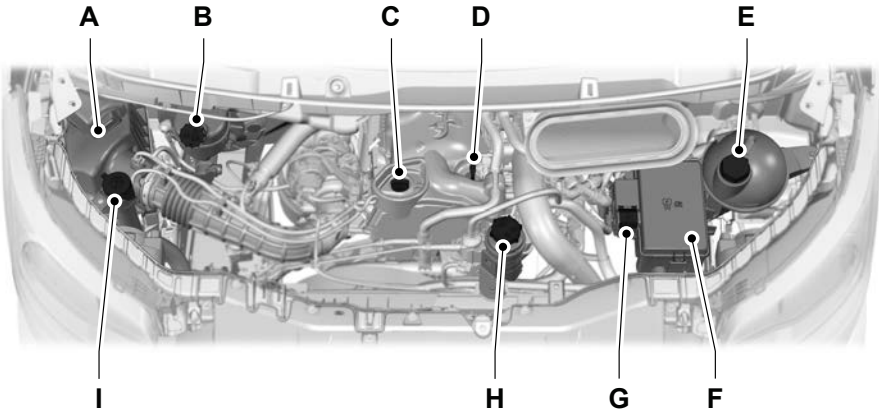


E226291

- A Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 408).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 408).
- C Air filter.
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 251).
- E Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 411).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 385).
- G Battery connection. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 372).
- H Power steering fluid reservoir.
- I Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - DIESEL, AWD/RWD/RHD

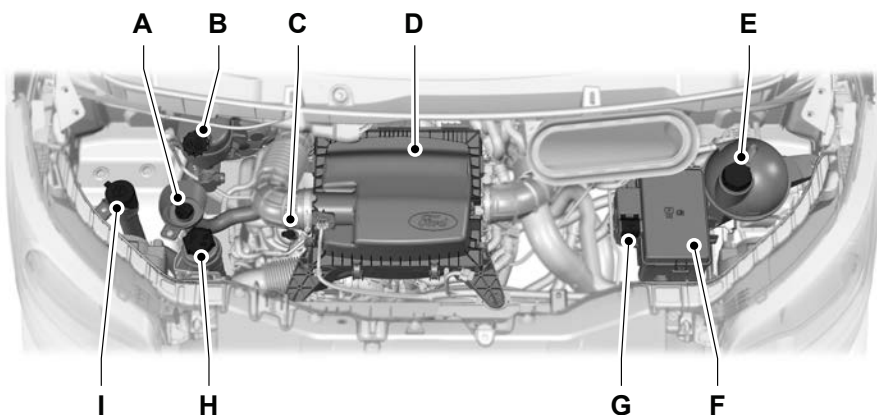


E226294

- A Air filter.
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 251).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 408).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 408).
- E Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 411).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 385).
- G Battery connection. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 372).
- H Power steering fluid reservoir.
- I Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - DIESEL, FWD/RHD

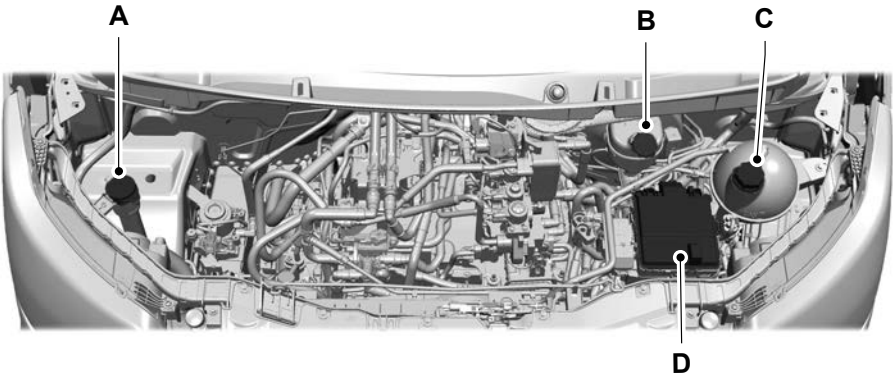


E226293

- A Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 408).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 251).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 408).
- D Air filter.
- E Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 411).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 385).
- G Battery connection. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 372).
- H Power steering fluid reservoir.
- I Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89).

Maintenance

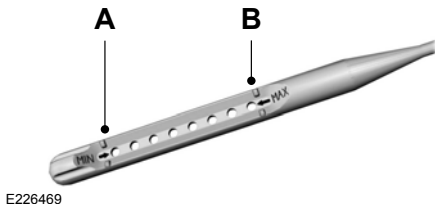
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



- A Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 251).
- C Coolant fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 411).
- D Under hood fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 385).

ENGINE OIL - DIESEL

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW



- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: *Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.*

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Maintenance

Note: Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.

Note: If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

Note: Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.

Note: If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADDING ENGINE OIL



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.

2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 492).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Under certain conditions the vehicle's intelligent oil life monitor may determine that your oil requires replacement prior to your general service. Should this occur it is recommended you replace your oil within two weeks or 800 km (500 mi) of being alerted.

Your authorized dealer will be able to advise you whether only an engine oil and filter change is recommended or whether you should complete your general service inclusive of oil and oil filter.

Checking the Current State of Oil Life

You can check the current state of oil life in percentage.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Oil life**.

Maintenance

ENGINE OIL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Change engine oil soon	Displays when the engine oil life is becoming depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Oil change required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Engine oil level low Add oil	Displays when the engine oil level is too low. Add engine oil as soon as possible. See Adding Engine Oil (page 409).

DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP - DIESEL



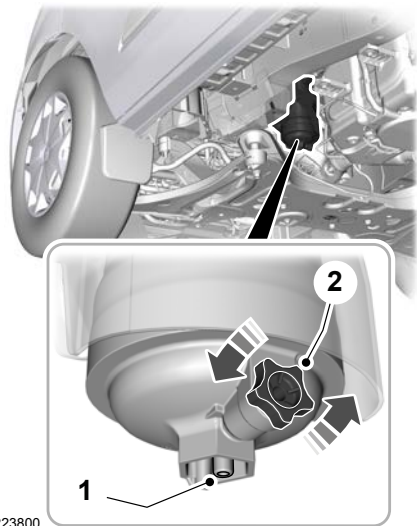
WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.



You should drain water from the fuel filter water trap whenever the warning light illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

This occurs when approximately 200 ml (7 fl oz) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. If you ignore the warning lamp, water may pass through to the system and may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap



E223800

1. Attach a tube to the drain plug and place the end of the tube into a suitable container.

Maintenance

2. Turn the drain plug counterclockwise until it stops. Do not use any tools to loosen the drain plug. Drain the fuel filter water trap into an appropriate container. Do not re-use the fuel drained from the fuel filter water trap.
3. Tighten the drain plug, turn it clockwise until it stops and you feel a strong resistance. Do not use any tools to tighten the drain plug.
4. Switch the ignition on for 30 seconds and then switch the ignition off. Repeat this operation six times in a row to purge any trapped air from the fuel system.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in all ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature.

COOLANT - DIESEL

COOLANT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Maintenance



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.



WARNING: Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

Maintenance

Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification.
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.

- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

Maintenance



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 379).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Checking the Coolant Level (page 411).

Maintenance

COOLANT - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the electric motor is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.



WARNING: Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

Maintenance

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the electric motor cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 492). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the electric motor or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionized or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 492). Using water that has not been deionized may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 492).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating your vehicle with a low level of coolant can result in overheating and possible electric motor damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without coolant, can cause damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Maintenance

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the electric motor may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced electric motor power in order to manage the coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 379).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the electric motor from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the temperature warning or stop safely messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Leave the vehicle powered on until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
4. Power the vehicle off and wait for it to cool.
5. Check the coolant level.
6. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
7. If the coolant level is normal, restart the vehicle and continue.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the electric motor or high voltage battery begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

Maintenance

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
Stop safely now	Displays when the coolant or high voltage battery temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, power the vehicle off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Managing the Coolant Temperature (page 417).
Limited performance due to hot battery	Displays if your vehicle has limited performance due to a hot high voltage battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Severe limited performance due to hot battery	

12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**

Maintenance



WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

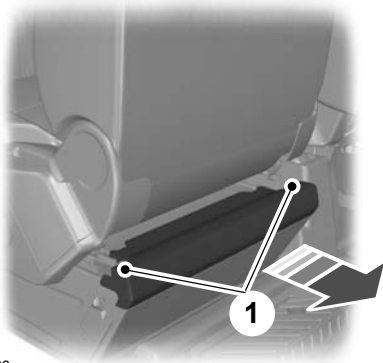
CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - DIESEL

The battery is under the driver seat.

Note: *If you have power seats and the battery has no charge, jump-start your vehicle to move the seat. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 370).*

Maintenance

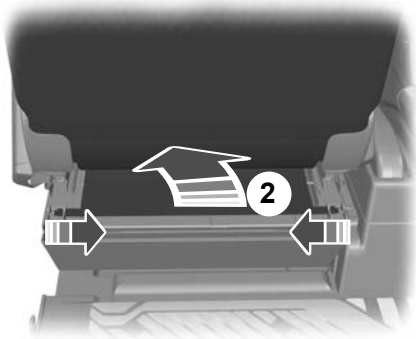
Removing the Battery



E152526

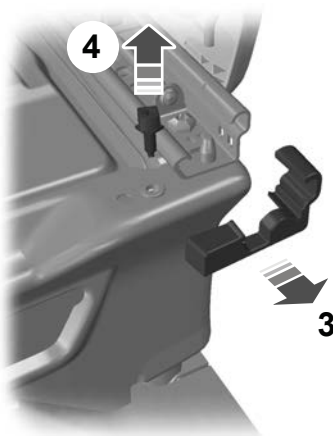
1. Fully raise the driver seat and move it fully forward. Pull the tabs upward and remove the cover.

Note: Your vehicle may not have this cover.



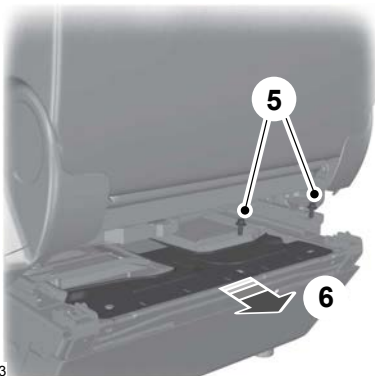
E152529

2. Unhook the cover and tuck it under the seat.



E146781

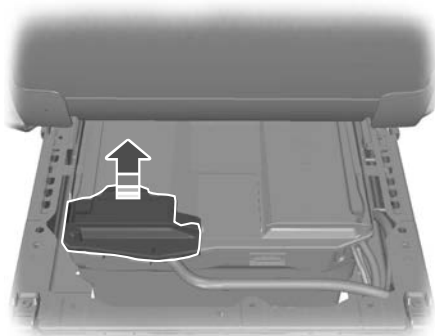
3. Remove both seat track end caps.
Note: Your vehicle may not have these end caps.
4. Remove both seat adjustment end stop bolts at the front of the seat.



E146773

5. Remove the battery clamp and cover bolts.
6. Remove the battery clamp and cover.

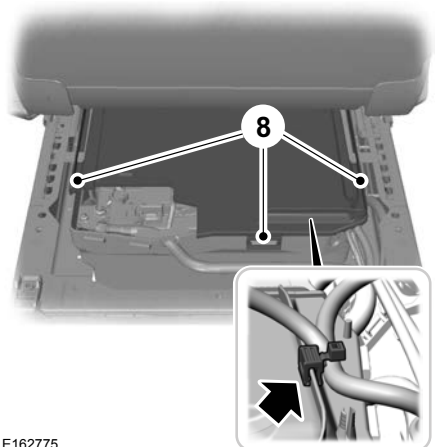
Maintenance



E162774

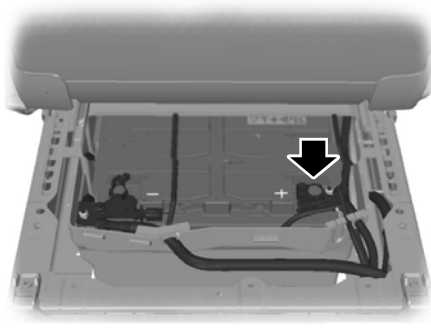
7. Remove the battery terminal cover and remove the negative (-) terminal.

Note: Single batteries could be mounted the opposite way around in the battery tray. The negative terminal is toward the rear of your vehicle.



E162775

8. Release the retaining clips and remove the cover.
9. Remove the cable securing clips from the cover.



E162776

10. Remove the positive (+) terminal and remove the battery.

Note: Batteries are heavy.

11. Move the second battery toward the rear of your vehicle and remove the negative (-) terminal.
12. Remove the positive (+) terminal and remove the battery.

Replacing the Battery



WARNING: Make sure that you securely fasten the seat runner bolts before installing the covers.

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable clips.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

Maintenance

RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 206).

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING - DIESEL

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Maintenance

Message	Details
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See Jump Starting the Vehicle (page 372). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when the green ready to drive indicator is activated, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

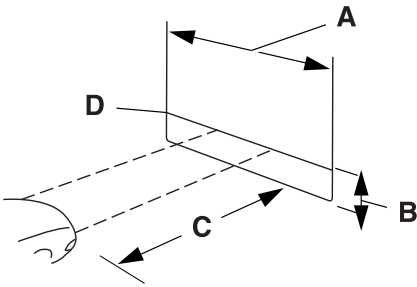
Message	Action
12V battery malfunction Service soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric range reduced due to park/hazard lamps on while vehicle off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.
Electrical system drain Service required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any after-market devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the aim of the headlamp beam checked by an authorized dealer.

Headlamp Aiming Target



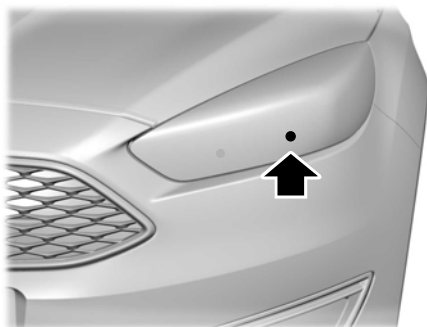
- A 8 ft (2.4 m)
- B Ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb

- C 25 ft (7.6 m)
- D Horizontal reference line

Vertical Aim Adjustment Procedure

1. Park your vehicle on level ground approximately 7.6 m (25 ft) from a wall or screen.
2. Measure the distance from the ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb and mark an 2.4 m (8 ft) long horizontal reference line on the wall or screen at this height.

Maintenance



E199411

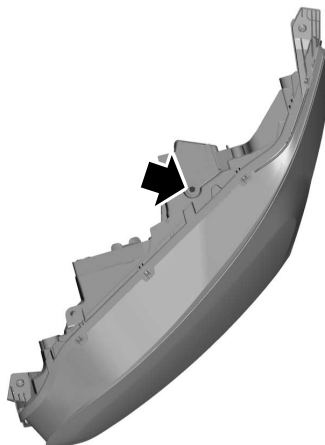
Note: There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the bulb.

Note: To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, you may want to block the light from the other headlamp.

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.



4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the flat zone of high intensity light is not on the horizontal reference line, adjust the aim of the headlamp beam.



E164485

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver or hexagonal socket, to turn the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

The horizontal aim of the headlamp beam on your vehicle is not adjustable.

Maintenance

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp. ¹	H15	55/15
Headlamp low beam. ¹	H7	55
Headlamp low beam and headlamp high beam. ²	D5S	25
Daytime running lamps. ²	LED.	-
Front turn signal lamp. ¹	PY21W	21
Front turn signal lamp. ²	PY24W	24
Cornering lamp. ¹	H1	55
Cornering lamp. ²	H11	55
Front fog lamp. ¹	H11	55
Front fog lamp. ²	H8	35
Front side marker lamp. ³	W5W	5
Mirror turn signal lamp. ⁴	W16W	16
Mirror turn signal lamp. ⁵	WY5W	5
Body side marker lamp.	W5W	5
Rear lamp and stoplamp.	P21/5W	21/5
Rear turn signal lamp.	PY21W	21
Reversing lamp.	P21W	21
Rear fog lamp. ⁶	P21W	21

Maintenance

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	-
Chassis cab rear marker lamp.	W5W	5
Roof outline marker lamp.	W5W	5
Rear floodlamp.	LED.	-
License plate lamp.	W5W	5

¹ Vehicles with Halogen Headlamps.

² Vehicles with High Intensity Discharge Headlamps.

³ Front side marker lamps are also available as LED lamps.

⁴ High Watt.

⁵ Low Watt.

⁶ Rear fog lamps are also available as LED lamps.

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

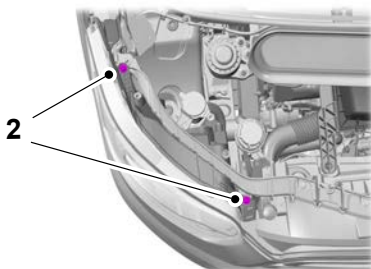
Maintenance

REMOVING A HEADLAMP ASSEMBLY



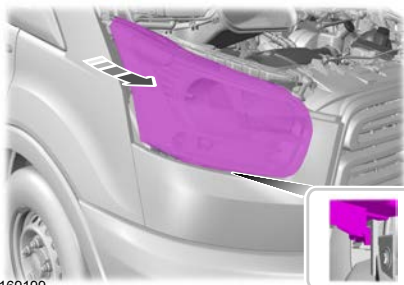
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

1. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 403).



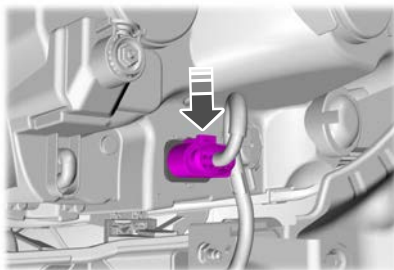
E169198

2. Remove the screws.



E169199

3. Pull the headlamp toward the front of your vehicle to disengage it from its locking points and then lift the headlamp up.



E169200

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: When you install the headlamp, make sure that you correctly attach the electrical connector.

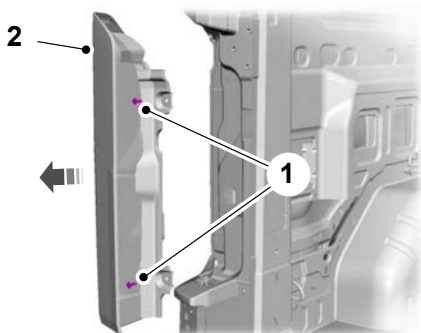
Note: When you install the headlamp, make sure that you correctly engage its locking points.

REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Maintenance



E175758

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A HEADLAMP BULB

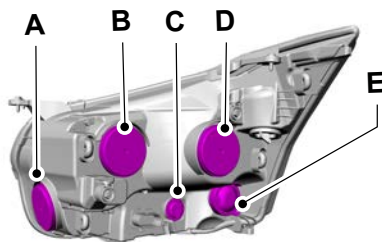
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

You must remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp Assembly** (page 428).

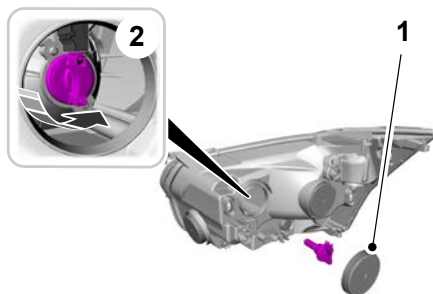
Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E169204

- A Cornering lamp.
- B Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp.
- C Front turn signal lamp.
- D Headlamp low beam.
- E Front side marker lamp.

Replacing the Headlamp High Beam and Daytime Running Lamp Bulbs



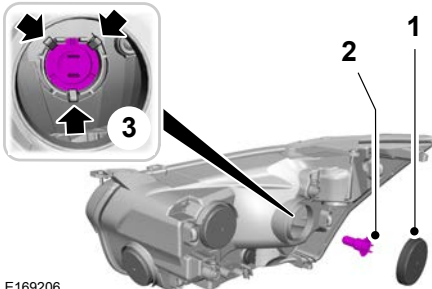
1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Maintenance

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

Replacing the Headlamp Low Beam Bulbs

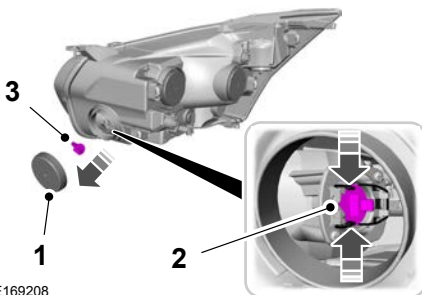


E169206

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Pull the bulb straight out past the retaining clips.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Replacing the Cornering Lamp Bulbs



E169208

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector and release the clip.

3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Replacing the High Intensity Discharge Headlamp Bulbs

These lamps operate at a high voltage. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

CHANGING A FRONT TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



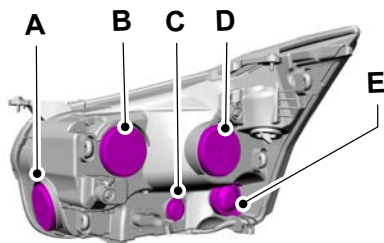
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

You must remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp Assembly** (page 428).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

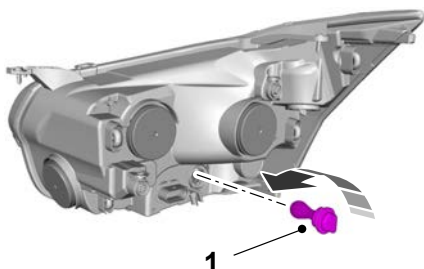
Maintenance



E169204

- A Cornering lamp.
- B Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp.
- C Front turn signal lamp.
- D Headlamp low beam.
- E Front side marker lamp.

Replacing the Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulbs



E169205

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A FRONT SIDE MARKER LAMP BULB

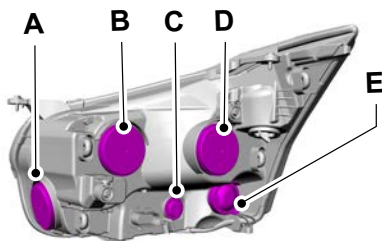
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

You must remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp Assembly** (page 428).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

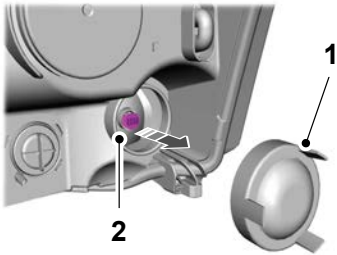


E169204

- A Cornering lamp.
- B Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp.
- C Front turn signal lamp.
- D Headlamp low beam.
- E Front side marker lamp.

Maintenance

Replacing the Front Side Marker Lamp Bulbs



1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A FRONT FOG LAMP BULB



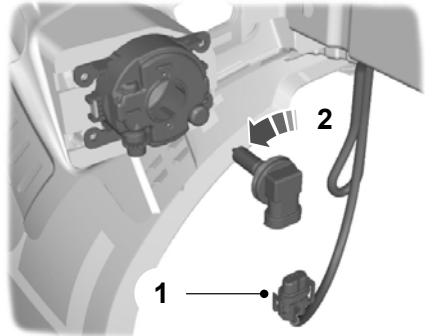
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E71062

1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

CHANGING A REAR FOG LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



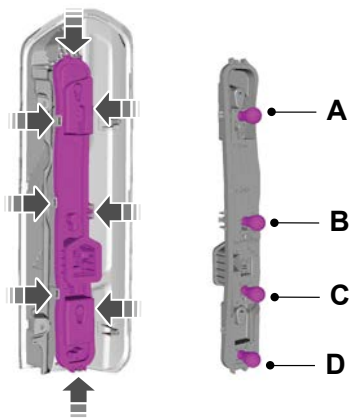
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 428).

Maintenance

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A MIRROR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB



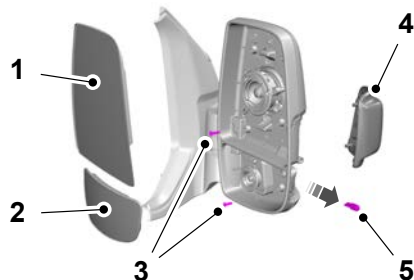
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E169209

1. Remove the large mirror glass. Tilt the mirror glass fully up and pull the mirror glass toward you from the bottom.
2. Remove the small mirror glass. Tilt the mirror glass fully down and pull the mirror glass toward you from the top.
3. Remove the screws.
4. Remove the lamp lens.
5. Remove the bulb.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING AN ENTRY LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

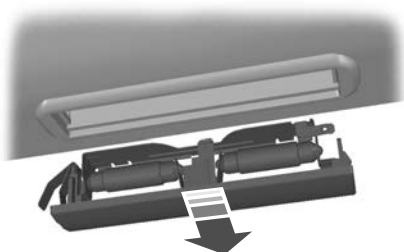
Maintenance



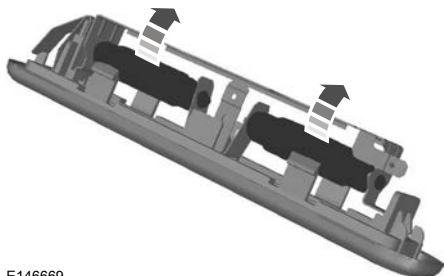
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E154369



E146669

1. Remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulbs.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

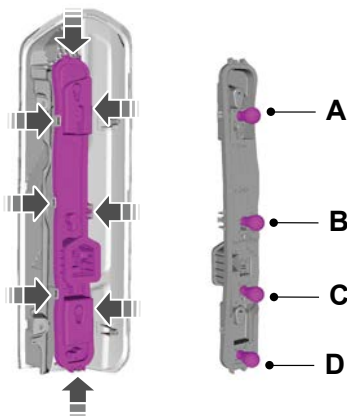


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 428).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
B Rear turn signal lamp.

Maintenance

- C Reversing lamp.
- D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A STOPLAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

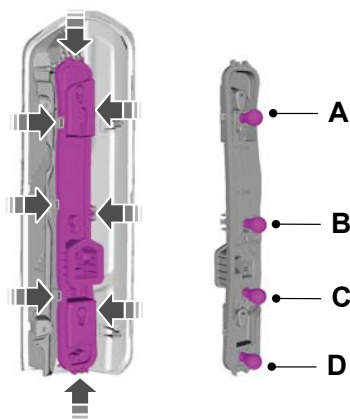


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 428).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



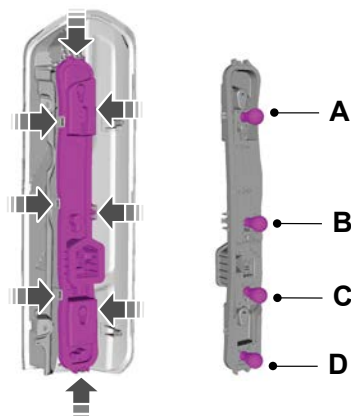
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Maintenance

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 428).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REVERSING LAMP BULB

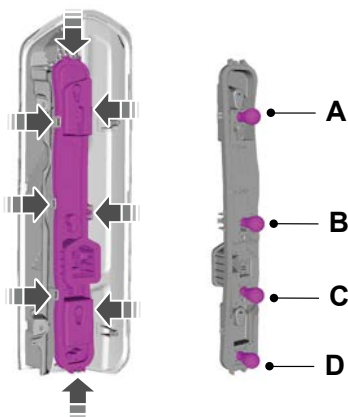
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 428).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.

Maintenance

- C Reversing lamp.
- D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A LICENSE PLATE LAMP BULB



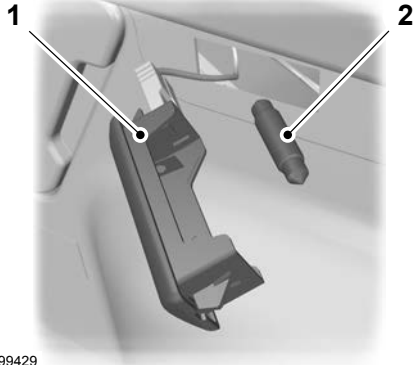
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 426).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E99429

1. Remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front interior lamp.	W6W	6
Front interior lamp. ¹	Festoon	6
Luggage compartment lamp.	211 Festoon	10
Map reading lamp.	W6W	6
Side door entrance lamp.	211 Festoon	10

¹ Vehicles with anti-theft alarm.

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

CHANGING A FRONT INTERIOR LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

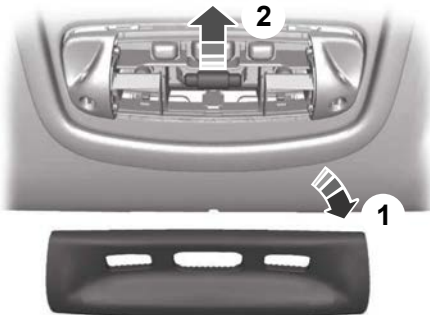


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Interior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 437).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Vehicles With Interior Sensors



E154370

1. Carefully remove the lens.
2. Remove the bulb.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A MAP READING LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

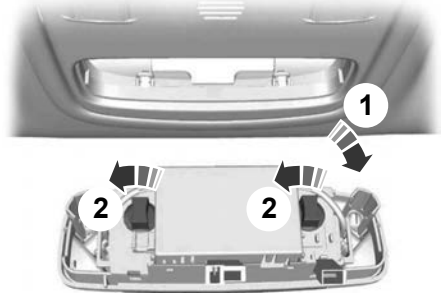


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Interior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 437).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

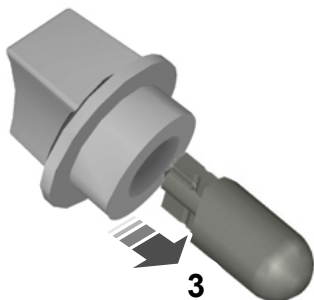
Vehicles With Interior Sensors



E72786

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

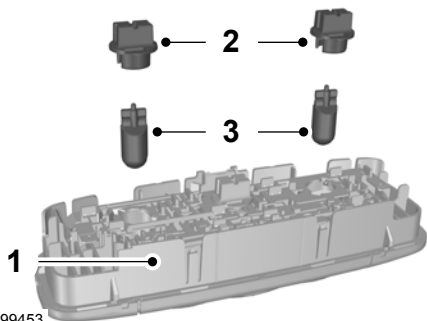
Maintenance



E73939

3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Vehicles Without Interior Sensors



E99453

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

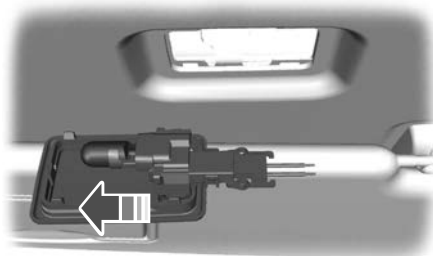
CHANGING A VANITY MIRROR LAMP BULB

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Interior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 437).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E72785

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

FUEL FILTER SERVICE INDICATOR CHECK - DIESEL



If the warning lamp illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter.

This occurs when approximately 200 ml (7 fl oz) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Alternatively you can drain the fuel filter water trap. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 410).

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: We recommend cleaning the power sliding rear window at regular intervals to avoid dust and debris accumulation to deliver appropriate function.

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Rinse the area well after cleaning.

Note: Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.

Note: Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.

Vehicle Care

Note: Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.

Note: If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.

- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C (73°F).

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Vehicle Care

3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage could lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which could cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Hybrid Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally we recommend disconnecting the 12V battery which reduces system loads on the HV battery.

12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Storing Your Vehicle

Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after washing your vehicle or cleaning the wheels, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

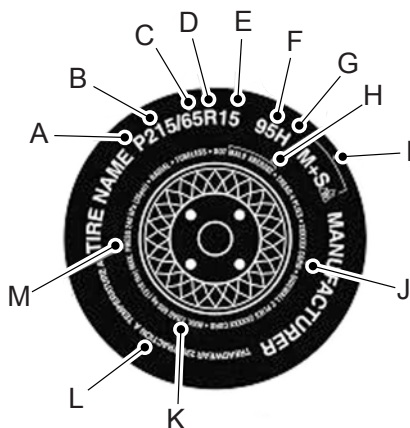
Wheel and Tire Information

LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures.

INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 130 km/h (81 mph) to 300 km/h (186 mph). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Wheel and Tire Information

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	130 km/h (81 mph)
N	140 km/h (87 mph)
Q	160 km/h (99 mph)
R	170 km/h (106 mph)
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
U	200 km/h (124 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. Tire Identification Number (TIN): A code which identifies manufacturing location and other information about the tire. It may include the letters "DOT" and be referred to as a DOT code. The last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The letters and numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material

Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's

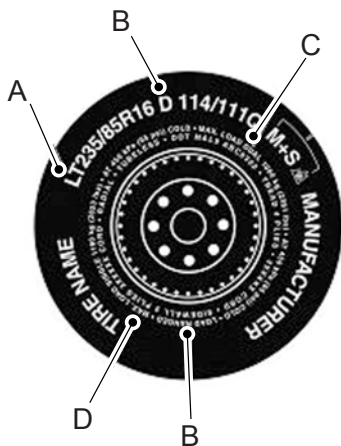
Wheel and Tire Information

recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position). The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. LT: Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. Load Range and Load Inflation

Limits: Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold: Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

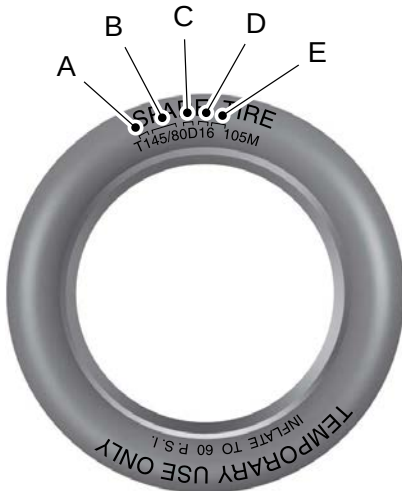
D. Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold: Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

Wheel and Tire Information



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 2.4 bar (35 psi) and for Metric tires 2.5 bar (36 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 2.9 bar (42 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.6 km (1 mi).

Wheel and Tire Information

***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position).

***B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

***Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



WARNING: For a mounting pressure more than 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



WARNING: Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



WARNING: When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

Wheel and Tire Information

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Age



WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 457). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 464).

USING SNOW CHAINS



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Wheel and Tire Information



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

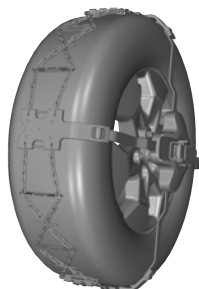


WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Note: Do not use snow chains that cover the inboard side-wall of the tire for any Front Wheel Drive vehicles.

If you use snow chains or cables, do the following:

- Only use single sided snow chains for Front Wheel Drive vehicles.
- Only use SAE Class S snow chains or cables of 10 mm (0.4 in) or smaller in diameter for Rear Wheel Drive and All-Wheel Drive vehicles.



An example of a single sided snow chain used for Front Wheel Drive vehicles.

Wheel and Tire Information

Snow Chain Use by Tire Size

Tire Size	Variant ⁴			
	Front Wheel Drive	Rear Wheel Drive - Vehicles With Single Rear Wheels	Rear Wheel Drive - Vehicles With Dual Rear Wheels	All-Wheel Drive
195/75R16C	X	X	Use SAE Class S snow chains or cables of 10 mm (0.4 in) or smaller in diameter fitted to the rear tires. ³	X
215/65R16C	Use single sided snow chains fitted to the front tires. ¹	X	X	X
205/75R16C	X	X	Use SAE Class S snow chains or cables of 10 mm (0.4 in) or smaller in diameter fitted to the rear tires. ³	X

Wheel and Tire Information

Tire Size	Variant ⁴			
	Front Wheel Drive	Rear Wheel Drive - Vehicles With Single Rear Wheels	Rear Wheel Drive - Vehicles With Dual Rear Wheels	All-Wheel Drive
235/65R16C 115/113	Use single sided snow chains fitted to the front tires. ¹	Use SAE Class S snow chains or cables of 10 mm (0.4 in) or smaller in diameter fitted to the rear tires. ²	X	Use SAE Class S snow chains or cables of 10 mm (0.4 in) or smaller in diameter fitted to the rear tires. ²
235/65R16C 121/119	Use single sided snow chains fitted to the front tires. ¹	Use SAE Class S snow chains or cables of 10 mm (0.4 in) or smaller in diameter fitted to the rear tires. ²	X	Use SAE Class S snow chains or cables of 10 mm (0.4 in) or smaller in diameter fitted to the rear tires. ²

¹ Only fit snow chains to the front tires.

² Only fit snow chains to the rear tires.

³ Only fit snow chains to the rear outer tires.

⁴ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 506).

X Not applicable for use with snow chains.

Note: Maintain correct tire pressures.

Note: The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.

Note: We recommend that you switch the traction control system off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 266).

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 457).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS

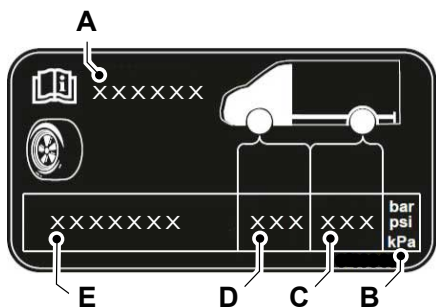


WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *If necessary, remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.*

Tire Care



- A Vehicle model.
- B Measure unit.
- C Rear tire pressure.
- D Front tire pressure.
- E Tire size.

E254055

Van, Kombi-Van and Kombi (front wheel drive)

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
290 M	2940	1625/1575	215/65R16C 109/107 R	3.7 (54)	3.6 (52)
310 M	3140	1650/1725, 1700/1725	215/65R16C 109/107 R	3.8 (55)	4 (58)
310 L	3140	1750/1725	215/65R16C 109/107 R	4 (58)	4 (58)
330 M 330 L 350 M 350 L	3365, 3500, 3550	1750/2000	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4 (58)
350 M 350 L	3500, 3550	1850/2000	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4 (58)
350 M	3500	1750/ 2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4.2 (61)
350 M	3500	1850/ 2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.2 (61)
350 M	3500, 3550	2000 / 2150	235/65 R16C 115/113 R	3.8 (55)	4.2 (61)

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
350 L	3500	1850/2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.5 (65)
350 L	3500, 3550	2000/2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.8 (55)	4.5 (65)
350 L	4100	2000/2500	235/65 R16C 121/119 R	3.7 (54)	4.9 (71)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 506).

Van, Kombi-Van and Kombi (single rear wheels with rear wheel drive)

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
350 M	3500, 3550	1750/2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4.2 (61)
350 M	3500	1850/ 2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.2 (61)
350 L	4100	1850/ 2500	235/65R16C 121/119 R	3.5 (51)	5 (73)
350 L 350 EF	3500, 3550, 3490	1750/2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4.5 (65)
350 L 350 EF	3500, 3995	1850/2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.5 (65)
390 M 390 L 390 EF	3900	1850/2500	235/65R16C 121/119 R	3.4 (49)	4.9 (71)
420 M 420 L 420 EF	4250, 4075	1850/2750, 1850/ 2600	235/65R16C 121/119 R	3.5 (51)	5.5 (80)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 506).

Tire Care

Van, Kombi-Van and Kombi (single rear wheels with all-wheel drive)

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
350 M	3500, 3550	1850/2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.2 (61)
350 L	4100	1850/ 2500	235/65R16C 121/119 R	3.5 (51)	5 (73)
350 L 350 EF	3500, 3550, 3490	1850/2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.5 (65)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 506).

Chassis Cab (front wheel drive)

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
310 M	3140	1650 / 1725, 1700 / 1725	215/65R16C 109/107 R	3.8 (55)	4 (58)
350M 350L	3500	1850 / 2000	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4 (58)
350M 350L	3500	1750 / 2000	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4 (58)
350 M	3500	1750 / 2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4.2 (61)
350 M	3500	1850 / 2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.2 (61)
350 M	3500	2000 / 2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.8 (55)	4.2 (61)
350 L 350 EF 350 EL	3500	1850 / 2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.5 (65)

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
350 L 350 EF 350 EL	3500	2000 / 2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.8 (55)	4.5 (65)
350 EF	3500	1750 / 2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4.5 (65)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 506).

Chassis Cab (single rear wheels with rear wheel drive)

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
310 S	3140	1550 / 1725	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3 (44)	3.2 (46)
330 S	3365	1650 / 2000	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.1 (45)	4 (58)
350 M	3500, 3550	1750 / 2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4.2 (61)
350 L 350 EF 350 EL	3500, 3550, 3490	1750 / 2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4.5 (65)
350 L 350 EF 350 EL	3500, 3550	1850 / 2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.5 (65)
390 L 390 EF	3900	1850 / 2500	235/65R16C 121/119 R	3.4 (49)	4.9 (71)
420 L 420 EF	4250, 4075	1850 / 2750, 1850 / 2600	235/65R16C 121/119 R	3.5 (51)	5.5 (80)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 506).

Tire Care

Chassis Cab (single rear wheels with all-wheel drive)

Variant	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
330 S	3365	1850 / 2000	235/65 R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4 (58)
350 M	3500, 3550	1850 / 2150	235/65 R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.2 (61)
350 L 350 EF 350 EL	3500, 3550	1850 / 2250	235/65 R16C 115/113 R	3.5 (51)	4.5 (65)

Van and Chassis Cab (dual rear wheel)

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
350 S 350 M 350 L 350 EF 350 EL 470 M 470 L 470 EF 470 EL	3500, 3490, 3995	1850/2450	195/75R16C 107/105 R	4.6 (67)	3 (44)
430 L 430 EF 430 EL	4300	1850 / 3000	195/75R16C 107/105 R	4.6 (67)	3.8 (55)
470 M 470 L 470 EF 470 EL	4700	1850 / 3300	195/75R16C 107/105 R	4.6 (67)	4.3 (62)
470 EF	4490	1850 / 3100	195/75R16C 107/105 R	4.6 (67)	4 (58)

Tire Care

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
470 L 470 EL	4100	1850 / 2600	195/75R16C 107/105 R	4.6 (67)	3.2 (46)
500 M 500 L 500 EF 500 EL	5000	1875 / 3300, 1875 / 3500, 2100 / 3500	205/75R16C 113/111 R	4.8 (70)	4.1 (59)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 506).

Skeletal Chassis Vehicles (SVO, Motorhomes)

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
350 M	3500,3550	2000 / 2150	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.8 (55)	4.2 (61)
350 L 350 EF 350 EL	3500,3550	2000 / 2250	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.8 (55)	4.5 (65)
410 L 410 EF 430 L 430 EF 430 EL	4100, 4250	2000 / 2500	235/65R16C 121/119 R	3.7 (54)	4.9 (71)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 506).

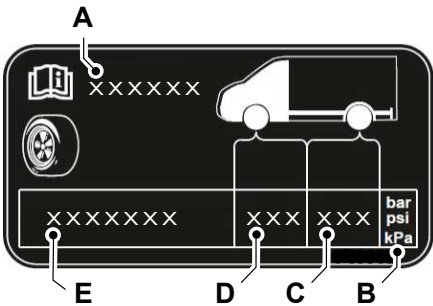
Tire Care

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - BUS

**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *If necessary remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.*



E254055

- A Vehicle model.
- B Measure unit.
- C Rear tire pressure.
- D Front tire pressure.
- E Tire size.

Variant ¹	Gross Vehicle Weight (kg)	Maximum Axle Weight (kg) Front/Rear	Tire Size	Front bar (psi)	Rear bar (psi)
350 M	3500	1750 / 2100	235/65R16C 115/113 R	3.3 (48)	4.1 (60)
410 L	4100, 3950, 3850	1850 / 2500	235/65R16C 121/119 R	3.4 (49)	4.9 (70)
440 EF	4415	1850 / 2850	235/65R16C 121/119 R	3.5 (51)	5.7 (83)
460 EF	4600	1850 / 3120	195/75R16C 107/105 R	4.6 (67)	4 (58)

¹ To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 506).

Tire Care

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismantled and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.



WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

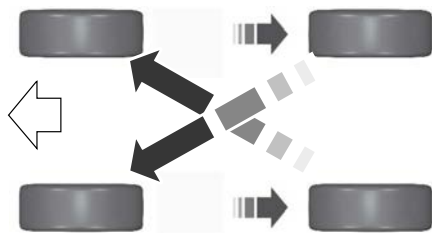
Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

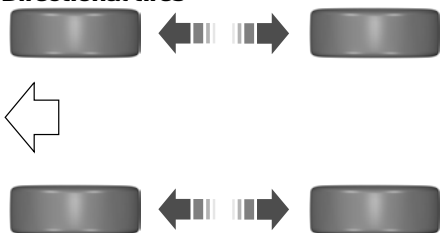
Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Tire Care

Non-directional tires



Directional tires



E70415

Note: *Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.*

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

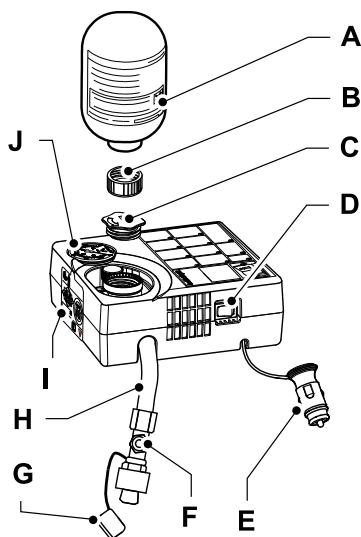
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is in the right-hand side stepwell.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS



- A Sealant bottle.
- B Bottle cap.
- C Orange cap.
- D On/Off switch.
- E Power plug with cable.
- F Pressure release valve.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

- G Protective cap.
- H Air/Sealant Hose.
- I Speed Restriction Label.
- J Pressure gauge.

Note: Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

WARNING: The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

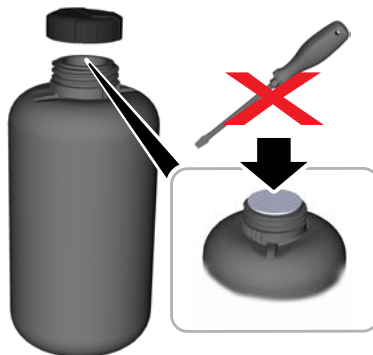
WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

Note: The recommended tire pressures are on the tire label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door.

WARNING: Do not run the engine when operating the air compressor unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

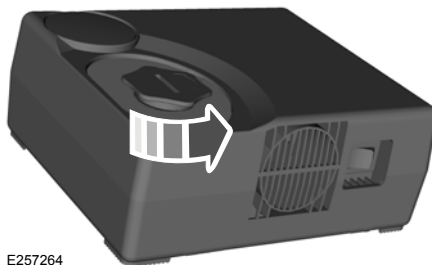
WARNING: The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

1. Pull out the hose (H) and the power plug with cable (E) from beneath the kit.
2. Unscrew the sealant bottle cap (B). Do not remove or puncture the seal on the bottle.



E256963

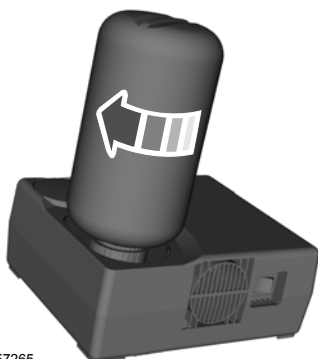
3. Unscrew the orange cap (C).



E257264

4. Screw the sealant bottle (A) clockwise into the bottle holder unit fully tight.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257265

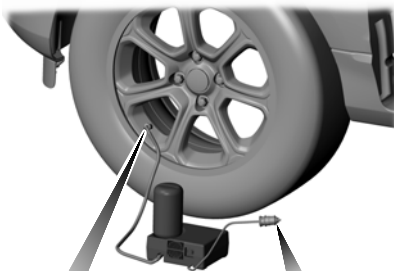
Note: Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as the sealant could escape.

5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
6. Make sure that the compressor switch (D) is in the OFF position and the pressure release valve (F) is closed by turning it fully clockwise.



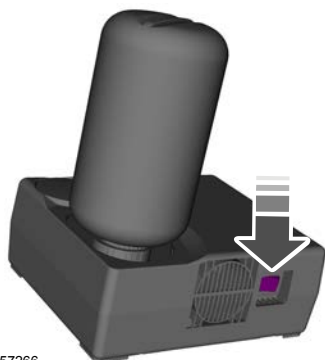
E262403

7. Pull the protective cap (G) from the hose (H). Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.



8. Plug the 12 V DC power point connector (E) into the 12 V DC socket in the vehicle. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 164).
9. Start the engine.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257266

10. Switch the compressor on.
11. Inflate the tire to the vehicle's specified inflation pressure. Do not operate the compressor for more than 15 minutes continuously. Move the compressor switch (D) to the OFF position and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge (J).

Note: If the specified inflation pressure is not reached within 15 minutes, you may disconnect the compressor, slowly roll the vehicle forward by 1 car length to distribute the sealant within the tire, then restart the inflation process. If the specified inflation pressure is still not reached, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. Stop and call roadside assistance.

Note: Note: When turning the compressor on with the sealant bottle attached, the sealant is pumped into the tire through the tire valve. The indicated pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi) during this process, but drops again after a few seconds.

Note: After you have switched the compressor off, you may hear air escaping from the damaged tire. This is normal and can be ignored provided that the specified minimum tire pressure has been reached.

12. Remove the power plug (E) from the 12 V power point.
13. Unscrew the hose (H) from the tire valve and put the protective cap (G) back in place. Replace the valve cap on the tire valve.

Note: Some residual sealant fluid may drip or briefly spray out the hose (H) while you are disconnecting it. This is normal.

14. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor. This avoids leakage of sealant residue.
15. Remove the warning label (I) showing the maximum permissible speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) from the side of the compressor and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
16. Make sure the kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely in your vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure after driving the vehicle a short distance.
17. Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 6 km (3.7 mi) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

Note: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, do not proceed to the second stage of this operation. Reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance.

18. After 6 km, stop and check the tire pressure.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

Note: The temporary mobility kit only provides an emergency repair. Regulations concerning tire repair after using the temporary mobility kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.

1. Stop your vehicle after driving approximately 10 km (6.2 mi). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
2. Attach the tire sealant and the inflator kit and check the tire pressure from the pressure gauge J.
3. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve F. If the tire pressure is less than the recommended pressure, repeat steps 11 to 16 and steps 1 to 2. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 457). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 464).
4. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch D to position OFF position, remove the power plug E from the auxiliary power point, unscrew the sealant bottle hose, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap A.
5. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the wheel, inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant. Renew the sealant bottle as soon as possible after it has been used once.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

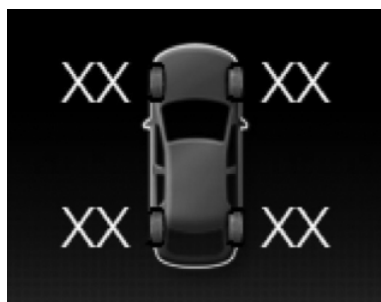
The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning lamp to turn off.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle maintenance**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

Note: *If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.*

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.

2. Select **Vehicle maintenance**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, the system must be retrained following every tire rotation.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tyre pressure low	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE - DIESEL



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).



WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

The locking wheel nut key is located in the glove box or next to the vehicle jack.

You can obtain replacement locking wheel nuts or a locking wheel nut key using the reference number certificate.



E145138

1. Open the rear doors and remove the grommet.



Changing a Road Wheel

2. Insert the square end of the wheel nut wrench or the short arm of the jack handle into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose enough to allow the spare to be pulled from under the vehicle.



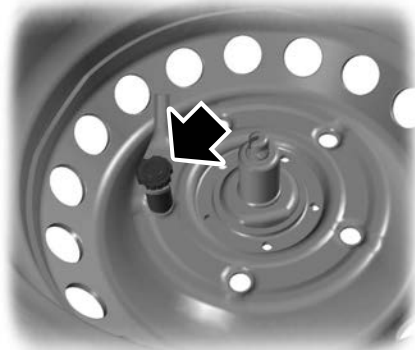
E146811

3. Raise the cable end cover.



E146812

4. Rotate the cable through 90°. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.



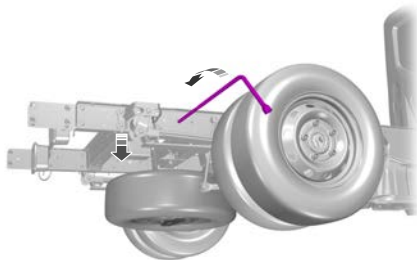
E146813

5. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.
6. Leave the cable extended. You need to use it to stow the flat wheel and tire assembly.

Changing a Road Wheel

Note: Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. Damage to the winch mechanism could occur.

Chassis Cab and Cutaway



1. Insert the square end of the wheel nut wrench or the short arm of the jack handle into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose enough to allow the spare to be pulled from under the vehicle.



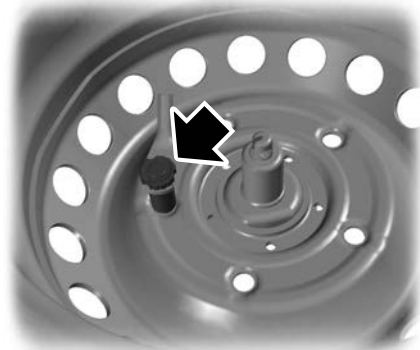
E146811

2. Raise the cable end cover.



E146812

3. Rotate the cable through 90°. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.



E146813

4. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.
5. Leave the cable extended. You need to use it to stow the flat wheel and tire assembly.

Changing a Road Wheel

Note: Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. Damage to the winch mechanism could occur.

Vehicle Jack



WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.



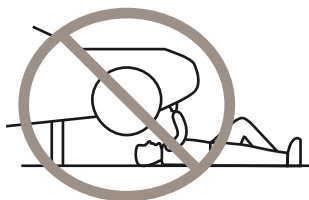
WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



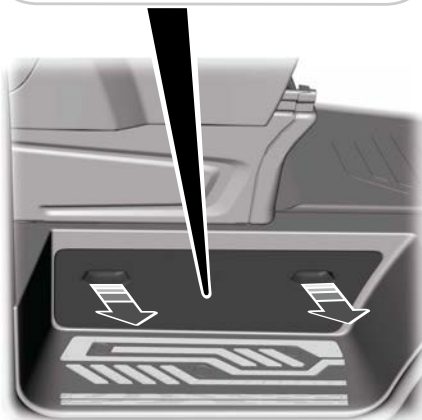
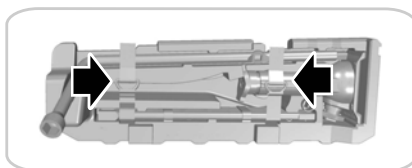
WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



Vehicle Jack Storage



The jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench are in a storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell.

Note: The vehicle jack is in the load space area on vehicles with rear climate control.



1. Assemble the jack rod.
2. Insert the flat end of the jack rod into the jack.

Changing a Road Wheel

3. Insert the square end of the jack rod into the wheel nut wrench and rotate clockwise to raise your vehicle.

FWD

Front Jacking Points

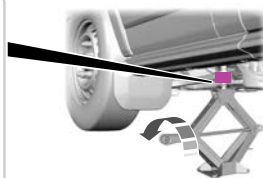
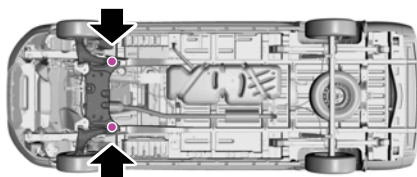
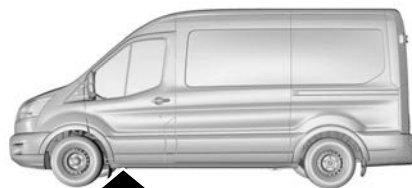


WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.

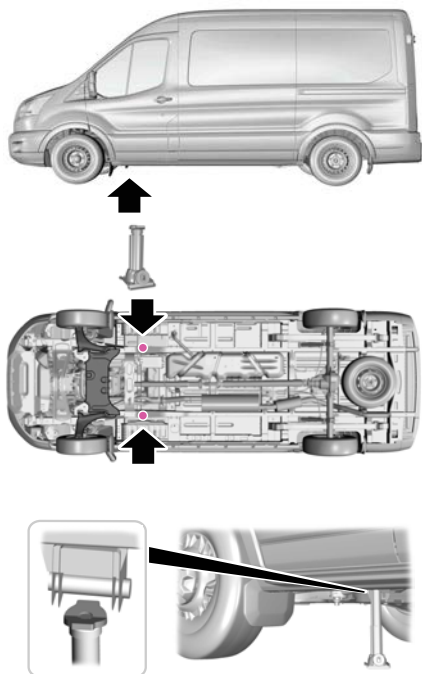
Note: If your vehicle has rear air conditioning make sure the vehicle jack does not come in contact with the air conditioning lines.



Position the head of the vehicle jack under the front sub-frame rear mounting bolts.

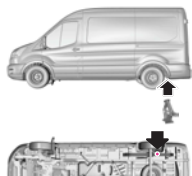
Changing a Road Wheel

RWD



Rear Jacking Points

FWD, Excluding: Motorhome Chassis



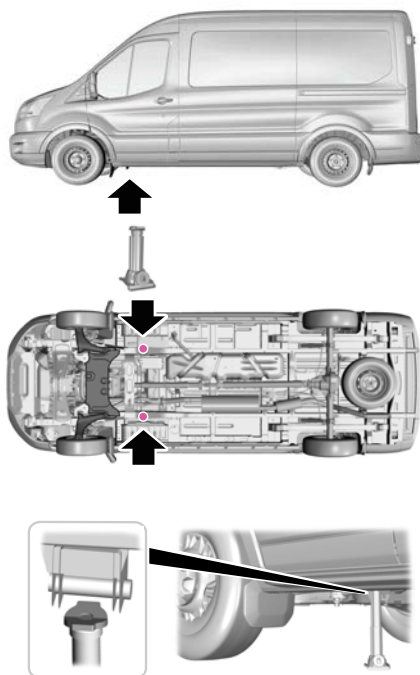
Position the vehicle jack under the rear leaf spring directly behind the rear wheel.

Note: *Position the vehicle jack on the flattest part of the spring and as close to the axle as possible.*

Position the head of the vehicle jack under the protrusions at the rear of front sub-frame.

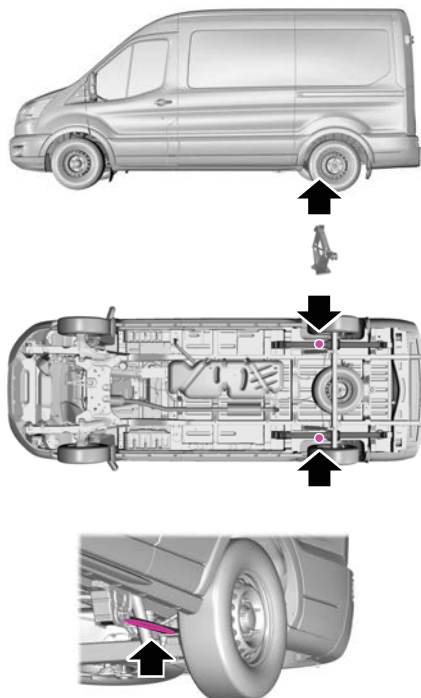
Changing a Road Wheel

RWD



Position the vehicle jack under the rear axle.

350/410 FWD Motorhome Chassis



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

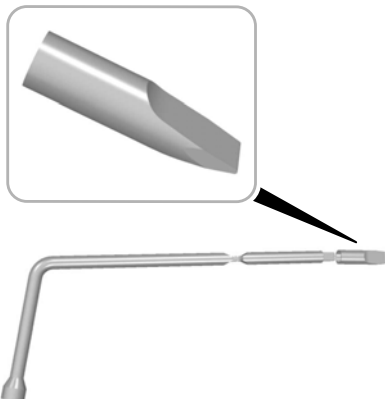
Position the vehicle jack under the rear leaf spring directly in front of the rear wheel.

Note: Position the vehicle jack on the flattest part of the spring and as close to the axle as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

Removing a Wheel Trim

Vehicles With Steel Wheels



1. Assemble the wheel trim removal tool onto the square end of the wheel nut wrench. The tool is in the storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell near the wheel nut wrench.
2. Insert the tip of the assembled tool between the wheel rim and the wheel trim.
3. Carefully remove the wheel trim.

Removing a Road Wheel

1. Use the locking wheel nut key to loosen the locking wheel nut.
2. Loosen the remaining wheel nuts, but do not remove them.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the wheel nuts and the road wheel.

Note: Do not lay alloy road wheels face down on the ground.

Installing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.



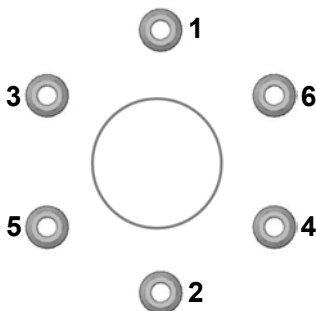
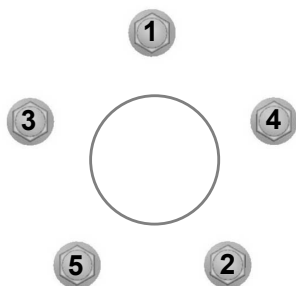
WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

1. Install the wheel.

Changing a Road Wheel



E70961

2. Install all of the wheel nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.
3. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
4. Fully tighten all of the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Install the wheel trim.

Note: Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.

Note: Alloy wheel nuts are suitable for use on a steel spare wheel.

Note: If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel replace it as soon as possible.

Note: Check the wheel nuts for correct tightness and check the tire pressure as soon as possible.

Stowing the Wheel and Vehicle Jack

1. Attach the spare wheel bracket to the wheel using the retaining nut.
2. Slide the cable through the slot and attach the spare wheel bracket to the winch.
3. Rotate the cable through 90° and lower the cable end cover.



E145138

4. Insert the square end of the wheel nut wrench or the short arm of the jack handle into the socket. Turn an additional 90 degrees once you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. If you lower the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached, you may damage the winch mechanism.

Note: Make sure the spare wheel is secure by tightening the winch until you feel a slip.

Note: Make sure that the wheel is securely stowed in the spare wheel well and it is not loose to avoid issues when driving.

Changing a Road Wheel

5. Reinstall the grommet, stow the vehicle jack, jack handle and wheel brace in their correct locations and secure them with the straps.

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).



WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, the warning indicator flashes if you fit the spare wheel to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the tire pressure monitoring system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps** (page 473). To prevent damage occurring to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors, make sure you have the damaged tire repaired or replaced by a tire professional.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel we recommend installing the temporary spare wheel and tire on the front axle.

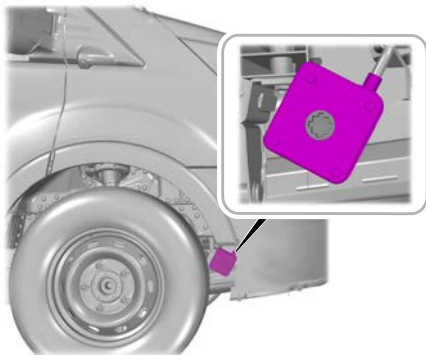
The spare wheel is under the front of the vehicle on all battery electric vehicles except E-LWB van, which is at the rear.

You can obtain replacement locking wheel nuts or a locking wheel nut key using the reference number certificate.

The locking wheel nut key is in the glove box or in the storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell.

Changing a Road Wheel

Van and E-LWB Van



If you have a van, find the winch on the chassis rail in front of the right side front wheel.



E145138

If you have E-LWB van, open the rear doors and remove the grummet.



1. Insert the square end of the wheel nut wrench or the short arm of the jack handle into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose enough to allow the spare to be pulled from under the vehicle.

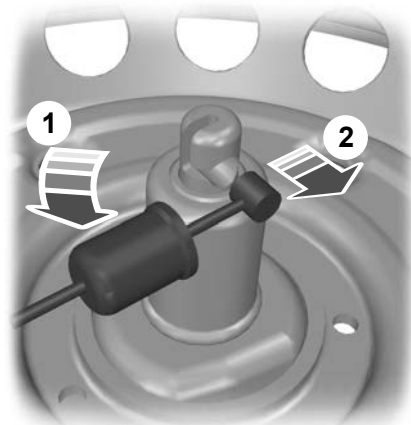
Note: *In case of a flat tire on the front it could be necessary to jack your vehicle to reach and withdraw the spare wheel. Withdraw the spare wheel by holding the tread.*

Changing a Road Wheel



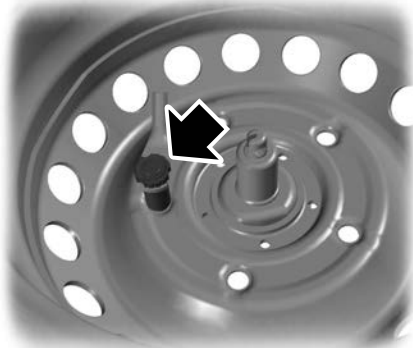
E146811

2. Raise the cable end cover.



E146812

3. Rotate the cable through 90°. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.



E146813

4. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.
5. Leave the cable extended. You need to use it to stow the flat wheel and tire assembly.

Note: Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. Damage to the winch mechanism could occur.

Vehicle Jack



WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Changing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.



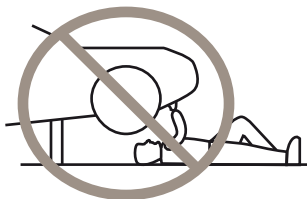
WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



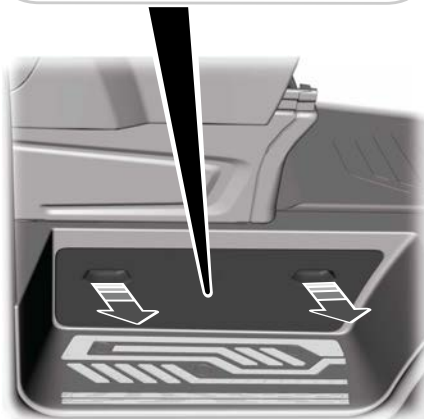
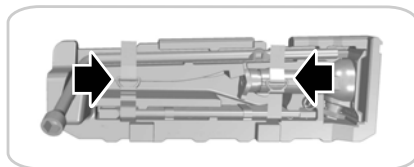
WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



Vehicle Jack Storage



The jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench are in a storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell.

Note: *The vehicle jack is in the load space area on vehicles with rear climate control.*



1. Assemble the jack rod.
2. Insert the flat end of the jack rod into the jack.

Changing a Road Wheel

3. Insert the square end of the jack rod into the wheel nut wrench and rotate clockwise to raise your vehicle.

Front Jacking Points



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

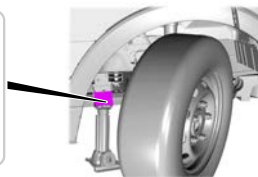
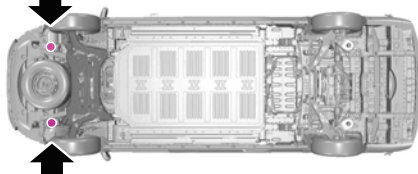


WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.



WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Note: If your vehicle has rear air conditioning make sure the vehicle jack does not come in contact with the air conditioning lines.



Position the head of the vehicle jack on the bolted body brackets.

Rear Jacking Points Vehicles



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

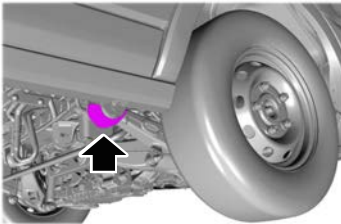
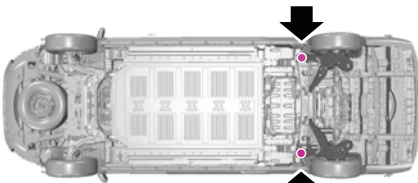
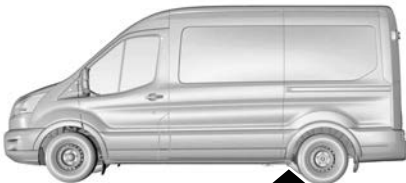
Changing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.



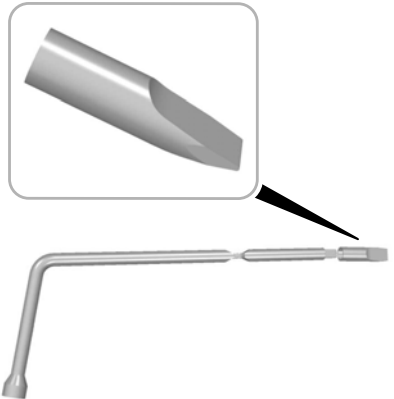
WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



Position the head of the vehicle jack under the outer bush of the suspension arm.

Removing a Wheel Trim (If Equipped)

Vehicles With Steel Wheels



1. Assemble the wheel trim removal tool onto the square end of the wheel nut wrench. The tool is in the storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell near the wheel nut wrench.
2. Insert the tip of the assembled tool between the wheel rim and the wheel trim.
3. Carefully remove the wheel trim.

Removing a Road Wheel

1. Use the locking wheel nut key to loosen the locking wheel nut.
2. Loosen the remaining wheel nuts, but do not remove them.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the wheel nuts and the road wheel.

Changing a Road Wheel

Note: Do not lay alloy road wheels face down on the ground.

Installing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

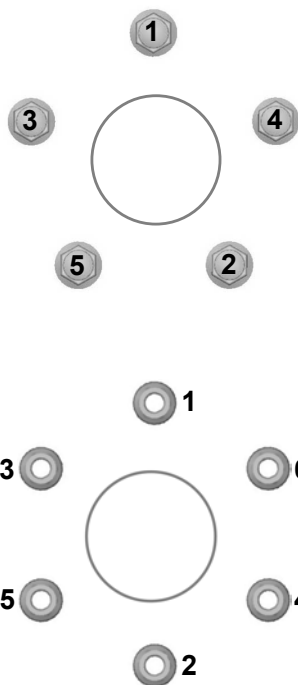


WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

1. Install the wheel.



2. Install all of the wheel nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.
3. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
4. Fully tighten all of the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Install the wheel trim.

Note: Make sure that the wheel nuts are fully seated against the wheel.

Note: Alloy wheel wheel nuts are suitable for use on a steel spare wheel.

Note: If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel replace it as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

Note: Check the wheel nuts for correct tightness and check the tire pressure as soon as possible.

Stowing the Wheel and Vehicle Jack

Note: Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. If you lower the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached, you may damage the winch mechanism.

1. Attach the spare wheel bracket to the wheel using the retaining nut.
2. Slide the cable through the slot and attach the spare wheel bracket to the winch.
3. Rotate the cable through 90° and lower the cable end cover.
4. Insert the square end of the wheel nut wrench into the socket. Turn an additional 90° once you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Make sure the spare wheel is secure by tightening the winch until you feel a slip.

Note: Make sure that the wheel is securely stowed in the spare wheel well and it is not loose to avoid issues when driving.

5. Stow the vehicle jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench in their correct locations and secure them with the straps.

WHEEL NUTS

Lug Nut Torque



WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make

sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use the specific lug nuts and wheels supplied with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Bolt size	Nm (lb.ft)
M14 x 1.5	204 (150)

Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - DIESEL

Dimension Description	Dimension
Bore.	84.01 mm (3.3 in)
Stroke.	90 mm (3.5 in)
Capacity.	1,996 cm ³ (122 in ³)
Compression ratio.	15.8:1
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Fuel type.	Diesel

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - BUS/KOMBI/VAN

Medium Wheelbase

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	5,531 (217.8)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,474 (97.4)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,059 (81.1)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	2,490–2,834 (98.0–111.6)
Wheelbase.	3,300 (129.9)
Front track.	1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0)
Rear track.	1,743–1,763 (68.6–69.4)

Long Wheelbase

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	5,981 (235.5)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,474 (97.4)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,059 (81.1)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	2,481–2,792 (97.7–109.9)
Wheelbase.	3,750 (147.6)
Front track.	1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0)
Rear track.	1,743–1,763 (68.6–69.4)

Long Wheelbase With an Extended Frame

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	6,704 (263.9)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,474 (97.4)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,059–2,126 (81.1–83.7)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	2,746–2,781 (108.1–109.5)

Capacities and Specifications

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Wheelbase.	3,750 (147.6)
Front track.	1,732–1,740 (68.2–68.5)
Rear track.	1,670–1,743 (65.7–68.6)

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - CHASSIS CAB/CHASSIS DOUBLE CAB

Short Wheelbase

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	5,357 (210.9)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,474 (97.4)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	2,324–2,352 (91.5–92.6)
Wheelbase.	3,137 (123.5)
Front track.	1,732 (68.2)
Rear track.	1,743 (68.6)

Medium Wheelbase

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	5,767 (227.0)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,474–2,746 (97.4–108.1)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	2,311–2,357 (91.0–92.8)
Wheelbase.	3,504 (138.0)
Front track.	1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0)
Rear track.	1,670–1,763 (65.7–69.4)

Capacities and Specifications

Long Wheelbase

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	6,204 (244.3)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,474–2,746 (97.4–108.1)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	2,316–2,349 (91.2–92.5)
Wheelbase.	3,954 (155.7)
Front track.	1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0)
Rear track.	1,670–1,763 (65.7–69.4)

Long Wheelbase With an Extended Frame

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	6,587–6,797 (259.3–267.6)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,474–2,746 (97.4–108.1)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	2,316–2,350 (91.2–92.5)
Wheelbase.	3,954 (155.7)
Front track.	1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0)
Rear track.	1,670–1,763 (65.7–69.4)

Extra Long Wheelbase With an Extended Frame

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	7,612–7,797 (299.7–307.0)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,474–2,746 (97.4–108.1)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	2,326–2,339 (91.6–92.1)

Capacities and Specifications

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Wheelbase.	4,522 (178.0)
Front track.	1,732–1,740 (68.2–68.5)
Rear track.	1,670–1,743 (65.7–68.6)

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - DIESEL

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
FWD	9.8 L (2.2 gal)
AWD/RWD	11.5 L (2.5 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 2 L (0.4 gal).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill the coolant to the MAX mark on the coolant reservoir.

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - DIESEL

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with standard fuel tank.	70 L (15.4 gal)
Vehicles with larger fuel tank.	95 L (20.9 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - DIESEL

**WARNING:** The air conditioning

refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
FWD vehicles without rear climate control.	0.74 kg (26.1 oz)	130 –0/+15 cm ³ (4.4 –0.0/+0.5 fl oz)
FWD vehicles with rear climate control. ¹	1.05 kg (37.0 oz)	180 –0/+15 cm ³ (6.1 –0.0/+0.5 fl oz)
FWD vehicles with rear climate control. ²	1.15 kg (40.6 oz)	180 –0/+15 cm ³ (6.1 –0.0/+0.5 fl oz)
AWD/RWD vehicles without rear climate control.	0.74 kg (26.1 oz)	167.5 ± 7.5 cm ³ (5.7 ± 0.3 fl oz)
AWD/RWD vehicles with rear climate control. ¹	1.05 kg (37.0 oz)	252.5 ± 7.5 cm ³ (8.5 ± 0.3 fl oz)
AWD/RWD vehicles with rear climate control. ²	1.15 kg (40.6 oz)	252.5 ± 7.5 cm ³ (8.5 ± 0.3 fl oz)

¹ Refrigerant volume for material specification R1234yf.

² Refrigerant volume for material specification R134a.

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-134A	WSH-M17B19-A
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
Compressor Oil - Air Conditioning 6U7J-M1C231-CA	WSH-M1C231-B

Note: Please check the label on the engine compartment for the correct specification.

Capacities and Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.9 ± 0.02835 kg (31.7 ± 1.0 oz)	170 ml (5.7 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-134A	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-BEV DU7J-M2C31-BA	WSS-M2C31-B2

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities and Specifications

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
Vehicles with heat pump.	1.25 ± 0.02835 kg (44 ± 1 oz)	250 ml (8.5 fl oz)
Vehicles without heat pump.	0.9 ± 0.02835 kg (32 ± 1 oz)	170 ml (5.7 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-134A	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-BEV DU7J-M2C31-BA	WSS-M2C31-B2

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - DIESEL

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	22.4 L (4.9 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 6-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION – MT82

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	2.4–0.1 L (2.5–0.1 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Oil 75W LV MU7J-M2C200-AA,MU7J-M2C200-BA	WSS-M2C200-E1

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 6-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION – VMT6

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	2.2–0.13 L (2.3–0.1 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Oil 75W LV MU7J-M2C200-AA,MU7J-M2C200-BA	WSS-M2C200-E1

Capacities and Specifications

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	3.55 L (3.8 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AB,HU7J-M2C949-BA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Note: Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Eight-speed automatic transmission (8F57).	11.5 L (12.2 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AB,HU7J-M2C949-BA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Capacities and Specifications

Note: Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	11.33 L (12.0 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AB,HU7J-M2C949-BA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Note: Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Capacities and Specifications

Note: *We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

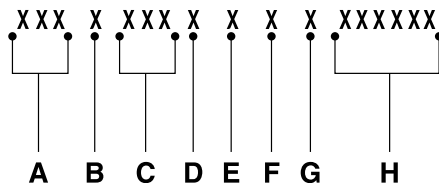
LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel. You can also find it stamped into the right-hand front wheel arch.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER OVERVIEW

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:



- A World manufacturer identifier.
- B Brake system, gross vehicle weight rating, restraint devices and their locations.
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type.
- D Engine or motor type.
- E Check digit.
- F Model year.
- G Assembly plant.
- H Production sequence number.

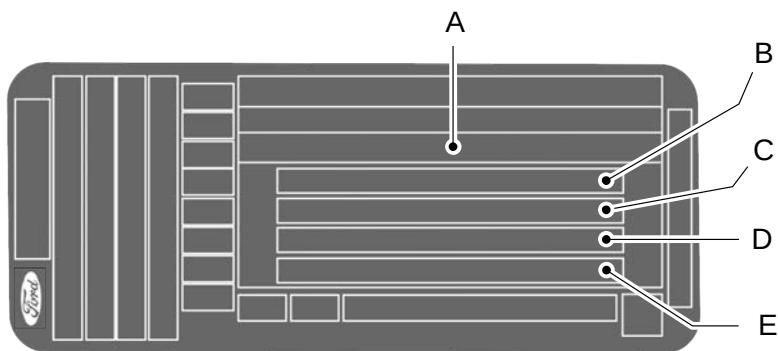
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



- A Vehicle identification number.
- B Gross vehicle weight.
- C Gross train weight.
- D Maximum front axle weight.
- E Maximum rear axle weight.

Note: The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.

Note: Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE - DIESEL

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View Available Networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

Note: Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Connected Vehicle

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

Note: The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Hotspot Visibility**.

Note: The hotspot visibility default setting is on.

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.

Note: The network name is the hotspot name.

4. Press **Show Password**.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: Secure websites do not redirect.

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

Note: If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

Note: If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

Note: If you carry out a vehicle system reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

Note: The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Network Name**.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press **Done**.
8. Press **Change Password**.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press **Done**.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

Note: *The Vehicle Hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will be unable to connect your device to the Vehicle Hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Frequency Band**.
6. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control or on the touchscreen.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

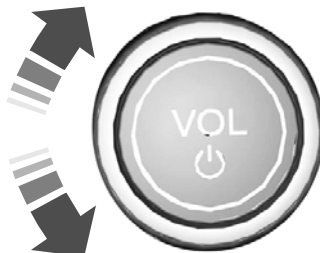


Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

Note: Not all sources can be paused. The button mutes these sources.

Note: The mute button on the steering wheel pauses the media source.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

Note: The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.

Audio System



Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

1.  Press the settings icon on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Select the desired menu point and adjust the settings.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Set the time.

Note: The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

FM RADIO

FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN FM RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Audio System



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

Center Display Overview

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h (5 mph).

STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

Audio System



Audio system muted.

Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Media player connected using **Bluetooth®**.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Unread email message.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Center Display Overview

Vehicle Software Update

Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

Swipe up and down to switch between the cards.

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Voice Interaction

WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on.
4. Press **Preferred Wake Word**.
5. Press a setting.

BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word followed by your command.



You can also press the button on the steering wheel to begin a voice interaction. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Press **Voice Command Help**.
4. Press a menu option on the list for the relevant examples.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Alexa Built-In

WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

Note: Support and functionality may vary based on the country in which your FordPass account is registered.

SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Get Started**.
4. Sign in to your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
5. Once signed in, follow the on-screen prompts.

6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Sign Out**.

USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

Note: If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on or off.

Note: If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

To change the contact sharing status:

Alexa Built-In

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Contact List**.
4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

Note: *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Things to Try**.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Note: Up to 12 devices can be stored.

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Phone

Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

Note: *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call list	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Phone

Item	
End call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Handsfree off	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

IOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

3. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.

2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.

3. Press **Sources**.

4. Press **Bluetooth**.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

APP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: Some apps can run through **Apple CarPlay** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®**.

Note: Some apps can run through **Android Auto** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Access the system applications.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when **Mobile Apps** are enabled.

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Apps

Note: Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.

Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Disabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Apple CarPlay**.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

Switching Android Auto On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
- 4.



Press this icon to switch Android Auto on or off.

Navigation

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access Navigation by pressing the map on the left side of the home screen.

Note: *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

Note: *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press Search.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Press the Go! button to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen.
2. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location.

Note: *Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.*

3. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the pin.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the Recents tile.
3. Select a destination from the list.

Navigation

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

Note: Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press and hold on a point of interest icon on the map.

Note: Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.

2. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT



Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

TRAILER TOWING NAVIGATION

The system calculates the best route for trailer towing by avoiding dangerous road conditions based on the dimensions of your trailer.

Note: This feature is only available if you properly attach the trailer to your vehicle.

Switching Trailer Towing Navigation On and Off

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Switch **Trailer-optimized Routing** on or off.

Entering Trailer Dimensions

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.

Navigation

3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Press **Towing Menu**.
5. Press **Add Trailer**.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen to enter the type and dimensions of the trailer into the system.

Driver Identification

HOW DOES DRIVER IDENTIFICATION WORK

Driver identification allows drivers to log into the vehicle using a specific user ID or profile.

SIGNING IN AS A DRIVER

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver ID**.
3. Select or add a driver as necessary.
4. Follow the screen instructions and log in.

Configuring Your Driver ID Avatar

1. Log in with your user ID.
2. Press your avatar image.
3. Select the settings you prefer.

DRIVER IDENTIFICATION – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER IDENTIFICATION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver not found.	The user ID used is not found in database.
Wrong PIN or password	The wrong PIN or password was entered.
Driver authentication time out. Unable to establish connection to the cloud.	When logging in, the vehicle is not able to establish a connection to the cloud.
Unable to establish connection to the cloud. Try again.	The vehicle is not able to establish a connection to the cloud.

Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See

Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network (page 508).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 532).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Software Updates**.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we do not recommend switching Automatic Updates off.

Vehicle Software Updates

Note: Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Recurring Schedule**.
2. Select the days and time for updates.
3. Press **Save**.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.
2. Press **Update Now**.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore settings to their factory defaults.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.
4. Press **Factory Reset**.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

AUTHORIZED DEALER DIRECTORY

Name	Telephone	Address	City
GİZERLER	(322) 346 80 80	Levent Mah. Eski Ceyhan Yolu Üzeri 5. Km No: 210 Yüreğir/ Adana	Adana
OTOKOÇ ADANA	(322) 441 17 17	Mersin Yolu Üzeri 9. Km Sarı Hamzalı Köyü Mevkii Merkez/ Adana	Adana
İNTERTEKS	(416) 227 24 01	Adıyaman Gölbaşı Karayolu Üzeri Küçük Sanayi Sitesi Karşısı Merkez/Adıyaman	Adıyaman
GLS GELİŞİM OTOMOTİV	(382) 245 44 14	Bahçesaray Mahallesi 135. Cadde No: 216 Aksaray	Aksaray
BAŞER	(312) 269 80 00	Ayaş Yolu Çatalkara Sokak No:199 Sincan/Ankara	Ankara
KARTAŞ	(312) 583 85 60	Tevfik İleri Mh. Özal Bulvarı No: 55 Pursaklar/Ankara	Ankara
OTOKOÇ ANKARA	(312) 207 47 00	Eskişehir Yolu 12. Km No:350 Ümitköy/Ankara	Ankara
TAN OTO	(312) 591 34 34	Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı No:252 Macunköy,Yenima- halle/Ankara	Ankara
BİLALLER	(242) 259 33 70	Sarısu Mah. 121. Sk. No:30/A- B Konyaaltı/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ALANYA	(242) 515 13 80	Çevreyolu Üzeri No: 1 Tosmur Beldesi Alanya/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ANTALYA	(242) 340 26 85	Altınova Sinan Mah. Havaalanı Yolu Üzeri Merkez/Antalya	Antalya
KAHYAOĞULLARI	(256) 633 10 01	Söke Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Kuşa- dası/Aydın	Aydın
ZAFER	(256) 219 40 00	Aydın-İzmir Karayolu 1.Km (Aymas Bitişiği) Merkez/Aydın	Aydın
AKOTO EDREMİT	(266) 374 06 65	İzmir Yolu Üzeri 2. Km. Ilıcalar Mevkii Edremit/Balıkesir	Balıkesir

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
AKOTO Merkez	(266) 283 00 10	İzmir Yolu 8. Km Osb Kavşağı Merkez/Balikesir	Balikesir
MUSLUBAŞLAR	(266) 721 21 21	600 Evler Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 95 Bandırma/Balikesir	Balikesir
OĞUZCAN	(488) 218 02 23	Gültepe Mahallesi Demokrasi Bulvarı No: 401 Merkez/Batman	Batman
OTOKOÇ BURSA	(224) 270 39 00	29 Ekim Mah. İzmir Yolu Cad. No:380/A Nilüfer/Bursa	Bursa
SÖNMEZ KOÇ	(224) 261 22 44	Yeni Yalova Yolu 9. Km Sönmez Asf. Karşısı Merkez/Bursa	Bursa
ARSLANLAR	(286) 263 06 25	İzmir Yolu 5. Km Merkez/Çanakkale	Çanakkale
EVLÜCE OTO	(364) 235 02 12	Ankara Asfaltı 7. Km Merkez/Çorum	Çorum
YARGÜL	(258) 371 23 79	Akçeşme Mevkii Menderes Bulvarı No: 161 Gümüşler/Denizli	Denizli
DİYARBAKIR OTO	(412) 255 04 45	Şanlıurfa Yolu Üzeri 4 Km Merkez/Diyarbakır	Diyarbakır
GÖRÜR	(380) 537 53 15	Taşköprü Köyü E-5 Mahallesi No: 55 Düzce	Düzce
TUZCULAR	(284) 763 11 23	Ford Plaza İstanbul Yolu 7. Km Merkez/Edirne	Edirne
ÇETİNKAYALAR	(424) 247 40 31	Malatya Yolu 8. Km Baskil Yol Kavşağı Merkez/Elazığ	Elazığ
CİNDİLLİ OTOMOTİV	(442) 242 00 13	Tortum Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Cindilli Ford Plaza Erzurum	Erzurum
OTOKOÇ ESKİŞEHİR	(222) 335 10 10	Şirintepe Mh. İsmet İnönü 2. Cad. No: 64 Tepebaşı Merkez/Eskişehir	Eskişehir
DOĞANLAR	(342) 323 23 13	Mücahitler Mahallesi Sani Konukoğlu Bulvarı No:28/A Şehitkamil/Gaziantep	Gaziantep

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OVALI ANTAKYA	(326) 221 61 65	İskenderun Yolu Üzeri 5. Km Antakya/Hatay	Hatay
OVALI İSKENDERUN	(326) 618 38 38	İsmet İnönü Mah.İbrahim Karaoğlu Cad.No: 38 Hatay/İskenderun	Hatay
SÜRKİT OTOM.	(476) 210 11 38	Söğütlü Mevkii Çevre Yolu Üzeri Ford Plaza Merkez/Iğdır	Iğdır
ATILGAN SANC-AKTEPE	(216) 498 98 00	Veysel Karani Mahallesi, Aşık Reyhani Caddesi No: 14 Sanc-aktepe/İstanbul	İstanbul
AYDOĞANLAR	(212) 665 84 84	Yenibosna Merkez Mah. Kavak Sokak Ser Plaza No: 3/1-2, Bodrum Kat Bahçelievler/İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ B.ÇEKMECE	(212) 863 84 10	Mimarsinan Merkez Mah.E-5 Londra Asfaltı No:57 B. Çekmece İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ MAHMUTBEY	(212) 454 40 00	Göztepe Mah. Rahim Sok. No: 2-4 Bağcılar/İstanbul	İstanbul
GÜRBAŞLAR	(216) 465 33 61	Göztepe Mah. Atatürk Cad. No:12 Migros karşısı A.Hisarı/İstanbul	İstanbul
KAR OTOMOTİV	(212) 612 49 49	Defterdar Mah. Fethi Çelebi Cad. No: 23/1 Eyüp/İstanbul	İstanbul
KELEŞLER	(212) 417 39 15	Uluyol Cad. No: 25/A Bayrampaşa/İstanbul	İstanbul
KENT OTOMOTİV	(212) 423 53 00	Saadetdere Mah. 68. Sok. No: 40 Esenyurt/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL İSTİNYE	(212) 229 95 55	İstinye Mah. Sarıyer Cad. No: 70/C Yeniköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL ATAŞEHİR	(216) 574 38 32	Kayışdağı Cd. No: 3 Flora Plaza Küçükbakkalköy, Ataşehir/İstanbul	İstanbul

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL TAŞDELEN	(216) 430 12 00	Çamlık Mah. Çobandere Mevkii Sırrı Çelik Bulvarı No: 9A/9B, Şile Otobanı 11. Km Taşdelen, Çekmeköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
TEPRETOĞULLARI	(216) 545 03 33	Acıbadem Mah Köftüncü Sokak No: 1/3 Kadıköy/ İstanbul	İstanbul
ARKAS İZMİR	(232) 399 34 34	Anadolu Cad. No: 687/C Karşıyaka/İzmir Karşıyaka/ İzmir	İzmir
ÇETAŞ İZMİR	(232) 478 07 07	Ankara Cad. Naldöken Mah. No: 319 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
İZKAR	(232) 254 38 00	Akçay Cad. No: 49 Gaziemir/ İzmir	İzmir
OTOKOÇ İZMİR	(232) 498 90 00	Kazım Dirik Mah. 296. Sokak No: 1 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
METİNLER	(352) 224 54 54	Konaklar Mevkii Sivas Cad. No: 244 Kayseri	Kayseri
ÜNAL	(352) 311 55 00	Anbar Mahallesi Osman Kavuncu Bulvarı No: 498 Anbar, Melikgazi/Kayseri	Kayseri
ÇANGAR	(392) 227 05 55	Soyak Evleri Mevkii, Küçükkaymaklı Mah. Şehit Mustafa Ruso Cad. Lefkoşe/ Kıbrıs	Kıbrıs
ACAMAR	(262) 606 10 10	Köşklü Çeşme Mah. İstanbul Cad. No:87 41400 Gebze/ Kocaeli	Kocaeli
ESOTO	(262) 335 43 15	Sanayi Mah. D-130 Yanyol Cad. No: 79 Merkez/Kocaeli	Kocaeli
OTOKOÇ KONYA	(332) 255 42 33	İstanbul Yolu Üzeri Sancak Mah. Büyükkırmak Sk. No:1 Selçuklu Merkez/Konya	Konya
ILICAK	(422) 444 59 55	1.OSB Mahallesi Havaalanı Yolu 2.Cadde No: 14/1 Yeşilyurt/MALATYA	Malatya

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ÇETAŞ MANİSA	(236) 233 84 00	Güzelyurt Mah. Menemen Cad. No:15/A Manisa	Manisa
ÇETAŞ SALİHLİ	(236) 716 16 00	Ankara Asfaltı 3. km. Salihli/ Manisa	Manisa
NAS OTO	(482) 312 04 44	Havaalanı Yanı 47100 Merkez/ Mardin	Mardin
HELVACIOĞLU BODRUM	(252) 358 68 38	Açık Kırlar Mevkii Atatürk Bulvarı No: 289 Konacık, Bodrum/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU FETHİYE	(252) 646 57 77	Karaçulha Belediyesi Cumhuriyet Cad. No: 199 Fethiye/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU Merkez	(252) 212 80 00	Orhaniye Mah. Uğur Mumcu Bulvarı No: 17 Merkez/Muğla	Muğla
ALTAŞ	(452) 234 19 20	Cumhuriyet Mah. Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı No: 102 Merkez/ Ordu	Ordu
ATILGAN RİZE	(464) 226 01 85	Cumhuriyet Çay Fabrikası Karşısı Gündoğdu Rize	Rize
AKGÜN	(264) 276 72 10	Hanlıköy Mahallesi Eskişehir Caddesi No: 93/A Arifiye/ Sakarya	Sakarya
OTOKOÇ SAMSUN	(362) 266 61 12	Samsun-Trabzon Karayolu 10. Km Kutlukent Tekkeköy/ Samsun	Samsun
KURT	(346) 502 58 58	Yeşilyurt Mah. Sultañşehir Blv. 146 Merkez/Sivas	Sivas
ŞANLIURFA OTO	(414) 316 62 27	Mardin Yolu 3.Km Jandarma Karşısı Merkez/Şanlıurfa	Şanlıurfa
DÖNÜŞÜM	(486) 616 76 16	Nusaybin Yolu Üzeri Cizre Çıkışı 8. Km Habur Tesisleri Yanı Nerme Mevkii Çavuşlu Köyü, Cizre/Şırnak	Şırnak
VOLKAN Çorlu	(282) 685 42 90	E-5 Karayolu Üzeri Önerler Mevkii Mücavir Mah. İstanbul Cad. 43/A, Çorlu/Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
VOLKAN Tekirdağ	(282) 293 38 82	Hürriyet Mah. Sami Efendi Sok. No:2 Süleymanpaşa/ Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
ORUÇLAR	(356) 214 41 43	Yeniyurt Mah. Vali Zekai Gümüşdiş Blv. No: 55/A Tokat	Tokat
TUNALAR	(462) 248 12 00	Tunalar Ford Plaza Yıldızlı/ Trabzon	Trabzon
AKKÖPRÜLÜ	(434) 217 17 17	Şabaniye Mah. İpekyolu 4. Km Merkez/Van	Van
ERDEĞER	(226) 351 73 50	Kılıç Köyü Şakşak Mevkii Çift-likköy/Yalova	Yalova
AZİM OTO	(372) 323 98 40	Muammer Aksoy Cad. No: 38 Karadeniz Ereğli/Zonguldak	Zonguldak

Service Intervals - Turkey

SERVICE INTERVALS

Model	Service Interval (Whichever Occurs First)	
• All passenger cars. • Ranger • Tourneo Connect. • Tourneo Courier. • Transit Connect. • Transit Courier.	1 year	15,000 km (9,500 mi)
• Tourneo Custom. • Transit. • Transit Custom.	1 year	20,000 km (12,500 mi)

Note: Service intervals may vary depending on engine options. For information about the service interval details of your vehicle, please refer to the local Ford website.

ROLLOVER WARNING



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

Customer Information

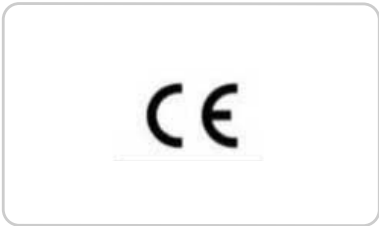
To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

ANTENNAS

European Union EU



Ukraine



United Kingdom



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar (RRU2)	Aptiv	2F5TR

Customer Information

Argentina



H-28070

Brazil



15375-23-12270

China

CMIT ID: 2023LJ10407

Europe Union EU



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7E6-M0-XDF-TME

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - 2F5TR.

Paraguay



Customer Information

NR: 2022-04-I-0255

Taiwan



CCAI23LP0640T2

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TDRA

ER10085/22
United Arab Emirates



United Kingdom

**UK
CA**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Vietnam

Ford Vietnam
A00182015



FCC ID: L2C2F5TR

IC: 3432A-2F5TR

Customer Information

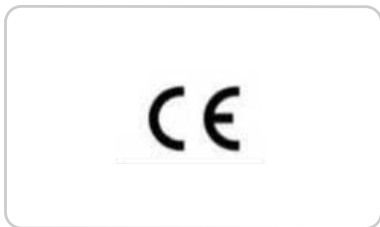
BODY CONTROL MODULE

Argentina



H-29805

European Union EU



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה סטנדרט משרד התקשורת: SI-87448
2. תל אישור לבצע פעולות במסגרת שיש בהן כדי לשמור את חובותיו האחריות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה פנימית או הסחת אחריות למכשיר לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, ככל החשש להפרעת אחריות.

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mexico



IFT: ROCOM323-07072

Moldova

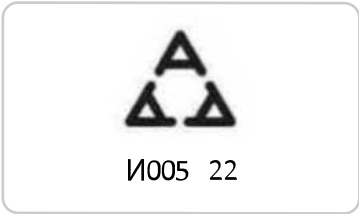


Customer Information

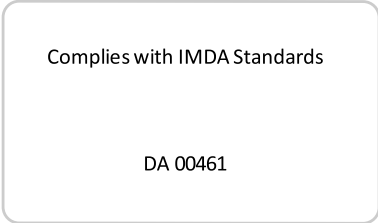
Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément:
MR00034975ANRT2022
Date d'agrément: 21/10/2022

Serbia



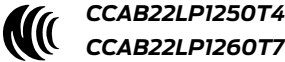
Singapore



South Africa



Taiwan



Ukraine



Customer Information

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TDRA

ER12810/22
United Arab Emirates



United Kingdom

**UK
CA**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: M3NA2C780107

IC: 7812A-A2C780107

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

Customer Information

Jamaica

H-16366

H-24101

H-28042

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931423

Brazil



Paraguay

02444-16-01821

02445-16-01821

03184-23-06546



European Union EU



NR: 2017-10-I-0000334

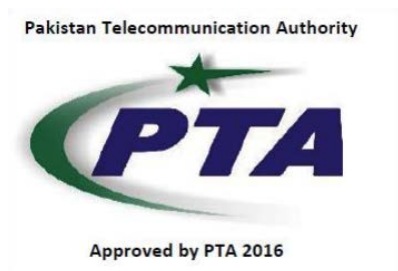
NR: 2018-07-I-000317

NR: 2016-9-I-000220

NR: 2016-9-I-000223

Customer Information

Pakistan



CCAB16LP284DT9

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER37535/15

DEALER No:
DA37380/15

Taiwan

CCAB16LP284CT7

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER49357/16
DEALER NO: DA37380/15

Customer Information

TRA
REGISTERED No: ER47690/16
DEALER No: DA37380/15

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER46754/16
DEALER NO: DA37380/15

United Kingdom



United States and Canada

**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: M3N-A3C054338
FCC ID: M3N-A3C054339
FCC ID: N5F-A08TAA
FCC ID: N5F-A08TDA
FCC ID: M3N-A2C931423
FCC ID: M3N-A2C931426
IC: 7812A-A3C054338
IC: 7812A-A3C054339
IC: 3248A-A08TAA
IC: 7812A-A2C931423
IC: 7812A-A2C931426

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Customer Information

RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

Argentina

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-114



CNC ID: H-24930

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0803/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément: 03/06/2020

Brazil



AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0802/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéros d'agrément : 033/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 07/06/2020

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéros d'agrément : 034/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 07/06/2020

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-108

Customer Information

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24102 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 18/05/2020

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER81341/20

DEALER No:
DA88113/20

Pakistan



TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER81342/20

DEALER No:
DA88113/20

South Africa



United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2C0082R

FCC ID: L2C0083TR

FCC ID: L2C0086R

IC: 342A-0083TR

IC: CAN RSS-Gen/CNR-Gen

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- 2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia



SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4 SYNC-G4L

Argentina



Customer Information

Brazil



08657-19-01505

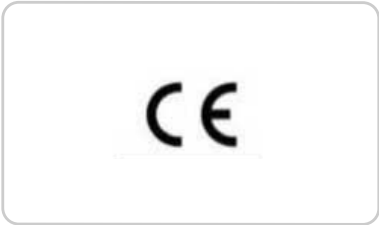
AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

European Union EU



08658-19-01505



Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Ghana

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Customer Information

Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4L

Malaysia

Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: 81116/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.

HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Customer Information

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019
07 AOÛT 2019

Moldova



Pakistan



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019
07 AOÛT 2019

Paraguay

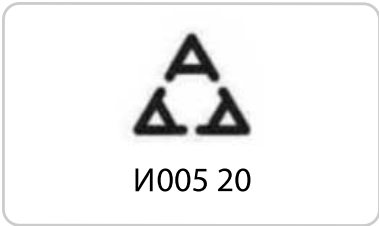


2020-03-I-00192

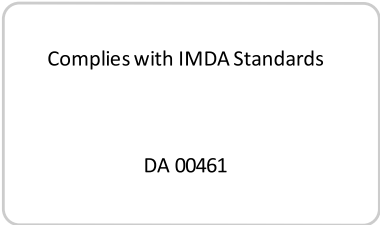
2020-03-I-00193

Customer Information

Serbia



Singapore



South Korea



South Africa



Taiwan



Customer Information

Ukraine



CCAB20LP0300T1



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TDR

ER74903/19
United Arab Emirates



TDR

ER74902/19
United Arab Emirates



Customer Information

United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

Zambia



TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Telematics Control Unit	Ford	FNV3-B6

Customer Information

China

CMIIT ID: 2023CJ1792

HIDF16000009

Mexico

European Union EU



Malaysia

Paraguay



Customer Information

NR: 2023-01-I-0047

Serbia



South Africa



South Korea



R-C-FDM-FNV3B6ROW

Taiwan



CCA235G0042T9

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER19896/23

DEALER No:

DA83047/19

United Kingdom



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-14H317-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H317NA1

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- 2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS

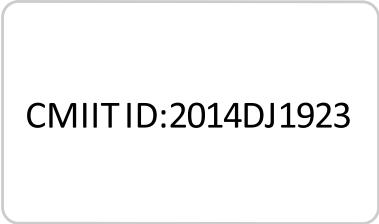
Device	Supplier	Type Designation
434 Faraday TPMS Sensor	Schrader/Sensata	AG2SZ4

Argentina

18962-22-08001



China



Brazil



Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation: HIR -0051/4/2014
Date d'homologation: 16/4/2014

Customer Information

Djibouti

European Union (EU)

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 198/MCPT/DDTCC

Date d'agrément : 7/9/2021



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type AG2SZ4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Customer Information

Ghana



Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Independent State of Samoa



Mauritania



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמת מסעם משרד התקשורת 51-77913
2. תל איסור לבצע פעולות בסיכור שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונות האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, כלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Mexico

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1238

Moldova



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA - AG2SZ4

Customer Information

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098
ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

Paraguay



Nigeria

Connection and use of this
communications
equipment is permitted by the Nigerian
Communications Commission

NR: 2017-06-I-0000175

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority



Approved by PTA 2020

Oman

OMAN TRA
TA-R/1752/14
D090258

Russia



Customer Information

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2017-002-0035

Serbia



W005 20

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa



TA-2014/064

Approved

South Korea



MSIP-CRM-SRD-AG2SZ4

Customer Information

Taiwan



Ukraine



Thailand

(1) เครื่องบินที่ขนส่งผู้โดยสารและบรรทุกสินค้า มีความปลอดภัยสูงตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.

(2) เครื่องบินที่ขนส่งผู้โดยสารและบรรทุกสินค้า มีความปลอดภัยสูงตามข้อกำหนดความปลอดภัยของกรมขนส่งทางอากาศ

การให้บริการเพื่ออำนวยความสะดวกแก่ผู้โดยสารในการเดินทางที่ปลอดภัยและสะดวกสบาย

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E)



Customer Information

United Kingdom



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXAG2SZ4

IC: 2546A-AG2SZ4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam



Zambia



REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Customer Information

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components"). SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Customer Information

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Customer Information

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Customer Information

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Customer Information

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Customer Information

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Customer Information

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Customer Information

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Customer Information

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Customer Information

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal
government agency, or any federal official
refuses to use the legend provided herein,
the Contracting Officer, federal
government agency, or any federal official
must notify HERE prior to seeking
additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User
Terms for any Application containing
Data for the United States shall contain
the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license
from the United States Postal
Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4®
information."

"©United States Postal Service®
20XX. Prices are not established,
controlled or approved by the United
States Postal Service®. The following
trademarks and registrations are
owned by the USPS: United States
Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provi-
sions apply to the Data for Canada,
which may include or reflect data from
third party licensors ("Third Party
Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen
in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"),
Canada Post Corporation ("Canada
Post") and the Department of Natural
Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client
agrees that its use of the Third Party
Data is subject to the following provi-
sions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data
is licensed on an "as is" basis. The
licensors of such data, including Her
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,
make no guarantees, representa-
tions or warranties respecting such
data, either express or implied,
arising by law or otherwise, including
but not limited to, effectiveness,
completeness, accuracy or fitness
for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third
Party Data licensors, including Her
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,
shall not be liable: (i) in respect of
any claim, demand or action, irre-
spective of the nature of the cause
of the claim, demand or action
alleging any loss, injury or damages,
direct or indirect, which may result
from the use or possession of such
Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of
revenues or contracts, or any other
consequential loss of any kind
resulting from any defect in the
Data.

Customer Information

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:
"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO"
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Customer Information

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Customer Information

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"	Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"	Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"	Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"	E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"		
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."		
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."		
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."		
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"	VI. Australia Territory A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy: Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).	
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"		

Customer Information

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

Customer Information

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Information

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Customer Information

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

Customer Information

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

Customer Information

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelmatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelmatics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelmatics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **“Suppliers”**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

CONVERTING OR MODIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production specification, refer to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual at <https://www.fordpro-specialvehicles.com>.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

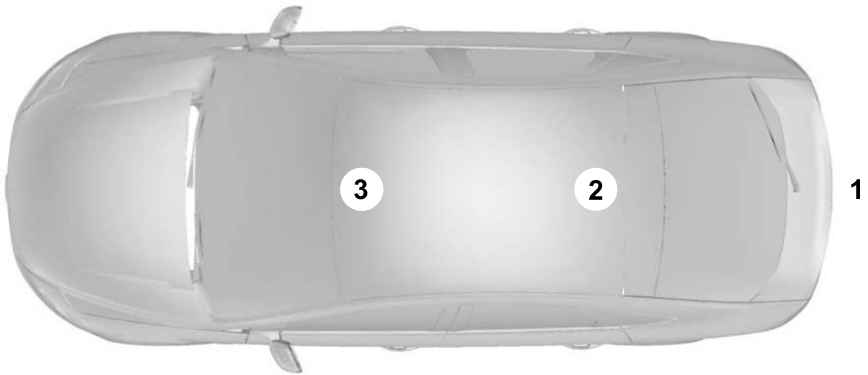


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

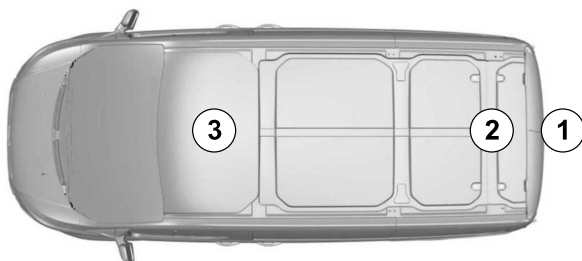
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle, such as, cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car

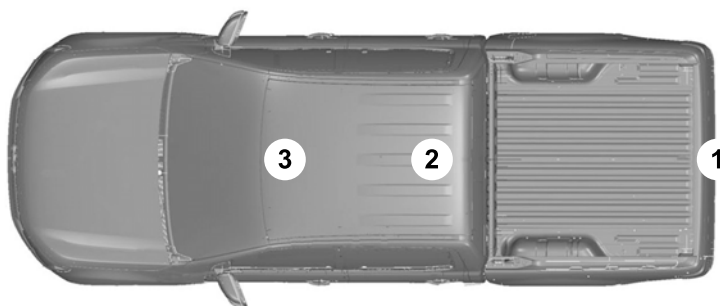


Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Index

1

12V Battery.....	418
12V Battery Precautions.....	418
Battery Management System	
Limitations.....	419
Changing the 12V Battery.....	419
Charging the 12V Battery.....	422
How Does the Battery Management	
System Work.....	419
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V	
Battery.....	422
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....	422
What Is the Battery Management	
System.....	419
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Battery	
Electric Vehicle.....	423
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	424
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	423
12V Battery – Troubleshooting -	
Diesel.....	422
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	422
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	422

3

360 Degree Camera.....	277
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	278
360 Degree Camera Limitations.....	277
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	277

A

A/C

See: Climate Control.....	122
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With:	
Automatic Temperature Control.....	126
About This Publication.....	19
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	251
Accessing Navigation.....	527
Accessing the Emergency Exit -	
Bus.....	376
Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position.....	181
Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position - Vehicles With: Push Button	
Start.....	176

Accessing the Trip Computer.....	119
AC Charging.....	218
Charging at Home.....	218
Charging in Public.....	221
Charging Using Your Public Charge	
Cord.....	223
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	284
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	299
Lane Centering.....	292
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	295
Predictive Speed Assist.....	296
Predictive Speed Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	299
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control.....	287
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control With Lane Centering/	
Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and	
Go.....	287
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	292
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Limitations.....	285
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Precautions.....	284
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	299
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information	
Messages.....	299
AdBlue® Capacity and	
Specification.....	202
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification -	
Diesel.....	500
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	104
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	424
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting	
Brightness.....	99
Adjusting the Map.....	527
Changing the Format of the Map.....	527
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	527
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	49
Adjusting the Seatbelts During	
Pregnancy.....	48
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	513
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	84
Adjusting the Volume.....	512

Index

Aid Mode.....	313	Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	81
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	313	What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	80
What Is Aid Mode.....	313	What Is Ask on Exit.....	80
Airbag Precautions.....	52	Appendices.....	596
Airbags.....	51	Applying the Electric Parking Brake -	
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	54	Automatic Transmission.....	256
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	54	Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an	
Airbags – Audible Warnings.....	54	Emergency.....	256
Airbags – Warning Lamps.....	54	Applying the Electric Parking Brake -	
Air Conditioning		Manual Transmission.....	256
See: Climate Control.....	122	Applying the Parking Brake.....	254
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With:		App Precautions.....	525
Automatic Temperature Control.....	126	App Requirements.....	525
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		Apps.....	525
Specification - Battery Electric		Audio System.....	512
Vehicle.....	499	Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	514
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		FM Radio.....	513
Specification - Diesel.....	498	Audio System Precautions.....	512
Alert and Aid Mode.....	314	Authorized Dealer Directory.....	534
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	314	Auto Hold.....	264
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	314	Auto Hold Indicators.....	264
Alexa Built-In.....	518	Autolamps.....	93
Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	518	Autolamp Settings.....	93
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	518	What Are Autolamps.....	93
All-Wheel Drive.....	250	Autolock.....	68
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	250	Autolock Requirements.....	68
All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	250	Switching Autolock On and Off.....	69
All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	250	What Is Autolock.....	68
All-Wheel Drive –		Automatically Releasing the Electric	
Troubleshooting.....	250	Parking Brake.....	257
All-Wheel Drive – Information		Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	376
Messages.....	250	Automatic Crash Shutoff	
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	251	Precautions.....	376
Anti-Lock Braking System		Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	376
Limitations.....	251	What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	376
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	79	Automatic Emergency Braking.....	340
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	80	Switching Automatic Emergency Braking	
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm		On and Off.....	340
System.....	80	What Is Automatic Emergency	
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System		Braking.....	340
Work.....	79	Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With:	
What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	79	Push Button Start.....	175
What Are the Interior Sensors.....	79	How Does Automatic Engine Stop	
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	79	Work.....	175
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	80	Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	176
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	79	Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and	
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	80	Off.....	176
Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	80	What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	175

Index

Automatic High Beam Control.....	95	Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 10-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	503
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....	96	Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	502
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....	96	Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	502
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....	96	Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	243
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....	96	Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	243
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....	95	Automatic Transmission Positions.....	241
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	97	Drive (D).....	242
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	96	Low (L).....	242
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	97	Manual (M).....	242
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	97	Neutral (N).....	241
Automatic Return to Park (P) - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	248	Park (P).....	241
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations.....	248	Reverse (R).....	241
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work.....	248	Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	241
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	245	Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	249
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	245	Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	249
Automatic Transmission.....	241	Auto Mode.....	129
Automatic Return to Park (P) - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	248	Auto Mode Indicators.....	129
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	241	Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	129
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	249	Autorelock.....	69
Manually Shifting Gears - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	246	How Does Autorelock Work.....	69
Temporary Neutral Mode - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	247	Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	184
		Auto-Start-Stop.....	183
		Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	184
		Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	184
		Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	183
		Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	184
		Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	185
		Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	184
		Autounlock.....	68
		Autounlock Requirements.....	68
		Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	68

Index

What Is Autounlock.....	68
Autowipers - Vehicles With:	
Autowipers.....	86
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor.....	87
Autowipers Settings.....	86
What Are Autowipers.....	86
Auxiliary Heater.....	133
Auxiliary Heater Indicators.....	133
Auxiliary Heater Precautions.....	133
AWD	
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	250

B

Battery Charge - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	117
Beginning a Voice Interaction.....	517
Blind Spot Assist.....	315
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	316
Blind Spot Assist – Information Messages.....	317
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	315
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	315
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	315
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	317
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators.....	318
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage – Information Messages.....	319
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	317
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work.....	317
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	317
Blind Spot Information System.....	321
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	327
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	324
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	325
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	322
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	321
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission.....	322
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission.....	322
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	327
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	327
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps.....	327
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	324
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	324
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work.....	324
Selecting a Trailer.....	325
Setting a Trailer Length.....	324
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....	324
Bluetooth®.....	524
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	397
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	397
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	398
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	403
Booster Seats.....	45
Bottle Holders.....	166
Bottle Holder Precautions.....	166
Locating the Bottle Holders.....	166
Brake Coach - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	117
Brake Fluid Specification.....	503
Brake Over Accelerator.....	251
Brake Precautions.....	251
Brakes.....	251
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	251
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	252
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	252
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	253
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	252
Breaking-In.....	364

Index

C

Canceling the Set Speed.....	282
Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....	307
Capacities and Specifications.....	492
Cargo Lamps - Van.....	99
Resetting the Cargo Lamp Switch.....	99
Switching the Cargo Lamps On and Off.....	99
Center Display Limitations.....	515
Center Display Overview.....	515
Center Display Precautions.....	515
Changing a Flat Tire - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	484
Changing a Flat Tire - Diesel.....	475
Changing a Road Wheel.....	475
Changing the Language.....	118
Changing the Measurement Unit.....	118
Changing the Parking Heater Remote Control Battery.....	136
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	60
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	61
Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	307
Changing the Temperature Unit.....	118
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	118
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	510
Charge Coupler Manual Release - Vehicles With: Front Charge Port.....	228
Charge Coupler Manual Release - Vehicles With: Rear Charge Port.....	229
Charge Port Indicators.....	217
Charging a Device.....	155
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols.....	235
Charging Equipment Indicators.....	212
Charging Equipment Overview.....	209
Charging Equipment Precautions.....	208
Charging Settings.....	230
Charging Your Vehicle.....	208
AC Charging.....	218
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	237
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	237
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	238
Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	237
Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps.....	237
Checking Local Hazard Information Status.....	306
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	251
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level.....	239
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level.....	201
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status.....	202
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	457
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	88
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	34
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	34
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	37
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	34
Child Restraints.....	42
Child Restraint Position Information.....	42
Installing Child Restraints.....	45
Child Safety.....	33
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	34
Child Restraints.....	42
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....	47
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....	47
Child Safety Locks – Information Messages.....	47
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door.....	46
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles Without: Power Sliding Door.....	46
Child Safety Precautions.....	33
Cigar Lighter.....	165
Cigar Lighter Precautions.....	165
Cleaning the Exterior.....	441
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	442
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	441

Index

Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	441	Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	507
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	442	Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	507
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	442	Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	507
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	441	What Is the Modem.....	507
Cleaning the Underbody.....	442	Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	508
Cleaning Wheels.....	441	Connecting Your Phone.....	520
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	441	Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle.....	595
Cleaning the Interior.....	443	Coolant - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	415
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	444	Adding Coolant.....	415
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	443	Changing the Coolant.....	416
Cleaning Fabric.....	443	Checking the Coolant Level.....	415
Cleaning Leather.....	443	Coolant - Information Messages.....	418
Cleaning Plastic.....	443	Coolant - Warning Lamps.....	417
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	444	Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	417
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	444	Coolant - Diesel.....	411
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	443	Adding Coolant.....	412
Cleaning Vinyl.....	444	Changing the Coolant.....	413
Climate Control.....	122	Checking the Coolant Level.....	411
Auto Mode.....	129	Coolant - Information Messages.....	414
Climate Control Hints - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	130	Coolant Precautions.....	411
Climate Control Hints.....	124	Coolant - Warning Lamps.....	414
Climate Control Hints - Diesel.....	129	Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	413
Closing the Sliding Door.....	71	Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	496
Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle.....	71	Crash and Breakdown Information.....	369
Closing the Sliding Door From Outside Your Vehicle.....	71	Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	376
Closing the Sliding Door With the Remote Control.....	74	Fail-Safe Cooling - Diesel.....	379
Clutch Fluid Specification.....	239	Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	370
Cold Weather Precautions.....	364	Post-Crash Alert System.....	375
Connected Vehicle.....	507	Recovery Towing.....	376
Connected Vehicle - Troubleshooting.....	508	Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	510
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	507	Cross Traffic Alert.....	331
Connected Vehicle Data.....	26	Cross Traffic Alert - Troubleshooting.....	334
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	507	Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	333
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	507	Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	334
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	508	Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	332
Connected Vehicle - Troubleshooting.....	508	Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	331
Connected Vehicle - Frequently Asked Questions.....	508	Cross Traffic Alert - Troubleshooting.....	334
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	524	Cross Traffic Alert - Information Messages.....	334
Connecting a Trailer.....	355	Cross Traffic Alert - Warning Lamps.....	334

Index

Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	333
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	333
What Is Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	333
Cruise Control.....	282
Cruise Control Indicators.....	283
Cup Holders.....	166
Cup Holder Precautions.....	166
Customer Information.....	541
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	542
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display.....	116
D	
Data Privacy - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	24
Data Privacy.....	23
Data Privacy - Diesel.....	23
DC Charging.....	226
Declaration of Conformity.....	541
Delivery Assist.....	280
Delivery Assist – Troubleshooting.....	281
Delivery Assist Indicators.....	280
Delivery Assist Limitations.....	280
Delivery Assist Precautions.....	280
Delivery Assist Settings.....	280
Delivery Assist – Troubleshooting.....	281
Delivery Assist – Information Messages.....	281
Deploying and Stowing the Power Running Boards.....	83
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	195
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	196
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	198
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	196
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Limitations.....	197
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Precautions.....	196
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Requirements.....	196
Starting Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	197
What Is Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	196
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions.....	195
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements.....	196
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	198
Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	198
Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	198
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	514
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....	514
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....	514
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	514
Digital Interior Mirror.....	103
Digital Interior Mirror Limitations.....	103
Digital Interior Mirror Settings.....	103
Switching Between Normal View and Camera View.....	103
What Is the Digital Interior Mirror.....	103
Directing the Flow of Air.....	124
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode.....	304
Distance Indication.....	339
Distance Indication Indicator.....	339
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....	339
What Is Distance Indication.....	339
Door Lock Indicators.....	69
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	69
Doors and Locks.....	64
Autolock.....	68
Autorelock.....	69
Autounlock.....	68
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	69
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	66
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	64

Index

Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	69
Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....	69
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	69
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap – Diesel.....	410
Drive Mode Control.....	301
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	302
Drive Modes - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	301
Drive Modes - Diesel.....	301
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	302
Drive Mode Control – Information Messages.....	302
Drive Modes - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	301
Eco.....	301
Normal.....	301
Slippery.....	301
Drive Modes - Diesel.....	301
Eco.....	301
Normal.....	301
Slippery.....	301
Tow/Haul.....	301
Trail.....	301
Driver Alert.....	345
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	346
Driver Alert Indicators.....	346
Driver Alert Precautions.....	345
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	346
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	346
Driver Identification.....	530
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting.....	530
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting.....	530
Driver Identification – Information Messages.....	530
Driving Economically.....	364
Driving Hints.....	364
Driving in Special Conditions.....	365
Electric Vehicle.....	366
Driving in Special Conditions.....	365
Driving In Sand.....	365
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	365
Driving Through Mud and Water.....	365
Driving on Snow and Ice.....	364
Driving Through Shallow Water - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	366
Driving Through Shallow Water - Diesel.....	365
Drowsiness Monitor See: Driver Alert.....	345
E	
Eco Coach.....	303
Efficient Drive Mode.....	304
Trip Summary.....	304
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators.....	305
Electric Economy - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	116
Electric Motor Temperature Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	109
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	257
Electric Parking Brake.....	256
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	257
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	257
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	258
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	257
Electric Vehicle.....	366
Maximizing Your Driving Range.....	366
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	596
Emergency Assistance.....	56
Emergency Call Limitations.....	57
Emergency Call Requirements.....	56
Emergency Call System Data - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	27
Emergency Call System Data - Diesel.....	27
Emergency Equipment.....	384
Emergency Towing.....	381
Enabling Apps on an Android Device.....	525
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	525
Enabling Local Hazard Information.....	306
Enabling Remote Start.....	120

Index

F

Index

Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	484
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Diesel.....	475
Floor Mats.....	367
FM Radio.....	513
FM Radio Limitations.....	513
Selecting an FM Radio Station.....	513
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	104
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	104
Forward Collision Warning.....	340
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.....	340
What is Forward Collision Warning.....	340
Frequently Asked Questions.....	63
Front Door Storage.....	167
Opening the Front Door Storage Compartment.....	167
Front Parking Aid.....	269
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	270
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	270
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	270
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	269
Front Seat Precautions.....	140
Front Seats.....	140
Heated Seats.....	147
Manual Seats.....	141
Power Seats.....	144
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings.....	194
Fuel and Refueling.....	189
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	194
Fuel Quality.....	190
Refueling.....	192
Running Out of Fuel.....	190
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	189
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	194
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	194
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	194
Fuel Consumption Regulations.....	194
Fuel Economy Display - Diesel.....	116
Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check - Diesel.....	440
Fuel Gauge – Diesel.....	108
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	108
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	108
What Is Distance to Empty.....	108
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	108
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	108
Fuel Quality.....	190
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	190
Fuel Tank Capacity - Diesel.....	497
Fuel Tank Capacity.....	193
Fuse Precautions.....	385
Fuses.....	385
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	397
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	402
High Current Fuse Box.....	400
Interior Fuse Box.....	391
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	385
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	402
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	402
G	
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	451
H	
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	424
Headlamps.....	91
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	92
Headlamp Indicators.....	92
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	91
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	91
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	92
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	92
Heated Seats.....	147
Heated Seat Precautions.....	147
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	147
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	122
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	126

Index

High Current Fuse Box.....	400	How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	263
Accessing the High Current Fuse		How Does Instantaneous Efficiency	
Box.....	400	Level Work.....	303
Identifying the Fuses in the High Current		How Does Pre-Collision Assist with	
Fuse Box.....	400	Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles	
Locating the High Current Fuse Box.....	400	With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	337
High Voltage Battery Gauge - Battery		How Does Pre-Collision Assist with	
Electric Vehicle.....	109	Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles	
High Voltage Battery.....	206	Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	337
High Voltage Battery -		How Does Pre-Collision Assist	
Troubleshooting.....	207	Work.....	336
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	206	How Does Reverse Brake Assist	
High Voltage Battery Temperature		Work.....	259
Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	109	How Does Speed Sign Recognition	
High Voltage Battery -		Work.....	343
Troubleshooting.....	207	How Does Stability Control Work.....	267
High Voltage Battery - Warning		How Does the 360 Degree Camera	
Lamps.....	207	Work.....	277
High Voltage Battery Vehicle		How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter	
Precautions - Battery Electric		Work.....	195
Vehicle.....	369	How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter	
Hill Start Assist.....	263	Work.....	309
Hill Start Assist - Troubleshooting.....	263	How Does the Lane Keeping System	
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	263	Work.....	312
Hill Start Assist - Troubleshooting.....	263	How Does the Rear Occupant Alert	
Hill Start Assist - Information		System Work.....	152
Messages.....	263	How Does the Speed Limiter	
Hood Lock		Work.....	307
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	403	How Does Traction Control Work.....	266
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With		How Does Traffic Sign Recognition	
Stop and Go Work.....	284	Work.....	347
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control		How Does Trailer Sway Control	
Work.....	284	Work.....	363
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work.....	250	How Does Trip Summary Work.....	303
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	264	How Does Wrong Way Alert Work.....	350
How Does Blind Spot Information		How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	51
System Work.....	321	How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	51
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	331	How Do the Side Curtain Airbags	
How Does Delivery Assist Work?.....	280	Work.....	52
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	345		
How Does Driver Identification		Identifying Fuse Types.....	401
Work.....	530	Ignition Switch.....	169
How Does Eco Coach Work.....	303	Inflating the Tires.....	457
How Does Efficient Drive Mode		Information On Demand Screen.....	516
Work.....	304	Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	448
How Does Emergency Assistance		Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	465
Work.....	56		
How Does Exit Warning Work.....	328		

Index

Instrument Cluster Display.....	115
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu.....	115
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	113
Instrument Cluster.....	106
Fuel Gauge - Diesel.....	108
Instrument Cluster Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	107
Instrument Cluster Overview - Diesel.....	106
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	110
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	311
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	310
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	309
Intelligent Speed Limiter - Troubleshooting.....	311
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	309
Intelligent Speed Limiter - Troubleshooting.....	311
Intelligent Speed Limiter - Frequently Asked Questions.....	311
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	308
Interior Air Quality.....	138
Interior Bulbs.....	437
Changing a Front Interior Lamp Bulb.....	438
Changing a Map Reading Lamp Bulb.....	438
Changing a Vanity Mirror Lamp Bulb.....	439
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	437
Interior Fuse Box.....	391
Accessing the Interior Fuse Box.....	391
Identifying the Fuses in the Interior Fuse Box.....	392
Interior Lamp Function.....	99
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	99
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	99
Interior Lighting.....	98
Cargo Lamps - Van.....	99
Interior Lamp Function.....	99
Interior Mirror.....	103
Digital Interior Mirror.....	103
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	103
Interior Overview - LHD.....	29
Interior Overview - RHD.....	30

Introduction.....	19

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	370
Jump Starting Precautions.....	370
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	372
Preparing the Vehicle.....	371

K

Keyless Entry.....	77
Keyless Entry - Troubleshooting.....	78
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	77
Keyless Entry Settings.....	77
Keyless Entry - Troubleshooting.....	78
Keyless Entry - Frequently Asked Questions.....	78
Keys and Remote Controls Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	63
Keys and Remote Controls Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	63
Keys and Remote Controls.....	59
Keys and Remote Controls - Troubleshooting.....	63
Keys and Remote Controls - Troubleshooting.....	63
Keys and Remote Controls - Information Messages.....	63

L

Lane Centering.....	292
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	292
Lane Centering Alerts.....	294
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	294
Lane Centering Indicators.....	295
Lane Centering Limitations.....	293
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	295
Lane Centering Precautions.....	293
Lane Centering Requirements.....	293
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	294

Index

Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	295
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	295
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	314
Lane Keeping System.....	312
Aid Mode.....	313
Alert and Aid Mode.....	314
Blind Spot Assist.....	315
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	317
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	320
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	312
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	312
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	313
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	320
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	320
Load Carrying.....	352
Roof Rack.....	352
Load Carrying Precautions.....	352
Loading Your Trailer.....	357
Local Hazard Information.....	306
Local Hazard Information Precautions.....	306
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	277
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System Kit.....	323
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System.....	323
Locating the Cabin Air Filter.....	138
Locating the Charge Port - Vehicles With: Front Charge Port.....	215
Locating the Charge Port - Vehicles With: Rear Charge Port.....	216
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System Kit.....	333
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System.....	332
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System Kit.....	330
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System.....	329
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	190
Locating the Power Outlets.....	157
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	338
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	338
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	275
Locating the Tire label.....	448
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	467
Locating the USB Ports.....	155
Locating Your Vehicle.....	60
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	84
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	85
Maintenance.....	403
12V Battery.....	418
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	423
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Diesel.....	422
Coolant - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	415
Coolant - Diesel.....	411
Engine Oil - Diesel.....	408
Exterior Bulbs.....	426
Interior Bulbs.....	437
Maintenance Precautions.....	403
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	522
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror.....	103
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	257
Manually Shifting Gears - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	246
Shifting Using the Buttons on the Selector Lever.....	247
Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters.....	246

Index

Manual Seats.....	141
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	141
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	143
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	149
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	143
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	143
Folding the Seat Armrest.....	143
Head Restraint Components.....	141
Installing the Head Restraint.....	142
Installing the Seats.....	151
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	142
Removing the Head Restraint.....	142
Removing the Seats.....	150
Swiveling the Seat.....	144
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 6-Speed Manual Transmission – MT82.....	501
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 6-Speed Manual Transmission – VMT6.....	501
Manual Transmission.....	239
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	240
Manual Transmission Precautions.....	239
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators.....	239
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	240
Manual Transmission – Frequently Asked Questions.....	240
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	569
Mobile Device Data.....	26
Moving Off Information System.....	325
Muting the Audio.....	512
N	
Navigation Map Updates.....	527
Navigation.....	527
Adjusting the Map.....	527
Route Guidance.....	528
Setting a Destination.....	527
Waypoints.....	528

O

Opening and Closing the Flip Key.....	59
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	403
Opening and Closing the Rear Quarter Windows.....	101
Opening and Closing the Sliding Windows.....	101
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	100
Opening the Sliding Door.....	70
Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle.....	70
Opening the Sliding Door From Outside Your Vehicle.....	70
Opening the Sliding Door With the Remote Control.....	73
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	66
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	67
Opening the Rear Doors From Inside Your Vehicle in an Emergency.....	67
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	66
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	64
Opening and Closing the Doors.....	65
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	65
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	64
OTA See: Software Update Settings.....	531
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	531
Overhead Storage.....	166
Locating the Overhead Storage.....	166
Overhead Storage Load Capacities.....	166
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	260
Overriding the Set Speed.....	292
Over the air See: Software Update Settings.....	531
Over-the-air See: Software Update Settings.....	531
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	531
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	531

Index

P

Parking Aid Indicators.....	272
Parking Aid Precautions.....	268
Parking Aids.....	268
Front Parking Aid.....	269
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	272
Rear Parking Aid.....	269
Side Parking Aid.....	270
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	272
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	272
Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	254
Parking Brake.....	254
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	254
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	254
Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	254
Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	254
Parking Heater Limitations.....	134
Parking Heater.....	134
Parking Heater Settings.....	134
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting.....	137
Parking Heater Precautions.....	134
Parking Heater Remote Control Indicators.....	136
Parking Heater Settings.....	134
Setting the Parking Heater Timer.....	134
Switching Continue Heat On.....	134
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting.....	137
Parking Heater – Information Messages.....	137
Passenger Airbag Indicators.....	53
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	79
Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	79
Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	79
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	79
Pedestrian Alert System.....	55
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting.....	55
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting.....	55
Pedestrian Alert System – Information Messages.....	55
Performing a System Reset.....	533
Personalized Settings.....	118
Phone Menu.....	520
Phone.....	520
Phone Precautions.....	520
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	524
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	155
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source.....	512
Post-Collision Braking.....	375
Post-Crash Alert System.....	375
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....	375
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	375
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....	375
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	375
Power Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	108
Powering Off.....	180
Power Outlet Indicators.....	158
Power Outlet Limitations.....	162
Power Outlet.....	157
Power Outlet – Troubleshooting.....	160
Power Outlet Precautions.....	157
Power Outlet – Troubleshooting.....	160
Power Outlet – Frequently Asked Questions.....	161
Power Outlet – Information Messages.....	160
Power Running Board Precautions.....	83
Power Running Board Settings.....	83
Power Running Boards.....	83
Power Running Boards – Troubleshooting.....	83
Power Running Boards – Troubleshooting.....	83
Power Running Boards – Frequently Asked Questions.....	83
Power Seats.....	144
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	144
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	146
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	146
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	146
Head Restraint Components.....	144
Installing the Head Restraint.....	145
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	145
Removing the Head Restraint.....	145

Index

Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	531
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	531
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	338
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	337
Pre-Collision Assist.....	336
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	340
Distance Indication.....	339
Evasive Steering Assist.....	340
Forward Collision Warning.....	340
Pre-Collision Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	341
Pre-Collision Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	341
Pre-Collision Assist – Information	
Messages.....	341
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning	
Lamps.....	341
Predictive Speed Assist.....	296
How Does Predictive Speed Assist	
Work.....	296
Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....	298
Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....	298
Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....	297
Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....	296
Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode	
On and Off.....	297
Predictive Speed Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	299
Predictive Speed Assist – Information	
Messages.....	299
Preparing Your Vehicle for	
Storage.....	446
Preserving Your High Voltage	
Battery.....	206
Programming the Remote Control.....	62
Protecting the Environment.....	28
Puncture	
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Battery Electric	
Vehicle.....	484
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Diesel.....	475
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	170
R	
Radio Frequency Certification	
Labels.....	542
Antennas.....	542
Blind Spot Information System	
Sensors.....	542
Body Control Module.....	545
Keys and Remote Controls.....	547
Radio Transceiver Module.....	551
SYNC.....	553
Telematics Control Unit.....	559
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Sensors.....	562
REACH.....	541
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	354
Locating the Rear Cargo Area Anchor	
Points.....	354
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Load	
Capacities.....	354
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point	
Precautions.....	354
Rear Cargo Area.....	354
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	354
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible	
Warnings.....	154
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Indicators.....	153
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Limitations.....	152
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Precautions.....	152
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	152
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Settings.....	153
Rear Overhead Storage.....	168
Locating the Rear Overhead Storage.....	168
Rear Overhead Storage Load	
Capacities.....	168
Rear Parking Aid.....	269
Locating the Rear Parking Aid	
Sensors.....	269
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	269
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	269
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	269
Rear Passenger Climate Control.....	132
Rear Seat Precautions.....	148
Rear Seats.....	148
Manual Seats.....	148
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	275
Rear View Camera Limitations.....	274
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	274

Index

Rear View Camera.....	274	Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....	67
Rear View Camera Settings.....	276	Resetting Driver Alert.....	345
Rear View Camera Settings.....	276	Resetting Ground Fault Detection.....	159
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off.....	276	Resetting the Power Sliding Door.....	74
Switching Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicator On and Off.....	276	Resetting the Trip Computer.....	119
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out.....	276	Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	473
Rebooting the Center Display.....	516	Restarting the Engine.....	183
Recovery Towing.....	376	Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off.....	180
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	376	Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	307
Accessing the Rear Towing Point.....	377	Resuming the Set Speed.....	283
Installing the Towing Eye.....	377	Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	260
Locating the Towing Eye.....	377	Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	259
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery.....	207	Reverse Brake Assist.....	259
Refueling.....	192	Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	261
Refueling System Overview.....	192	Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	261
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	192	Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	262
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	257	Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages.....	261
Releasing the Parking Brake.....	254	Reverse Wipe - Vehicles With: Rear Window Wiper and Washer.....	87
Remote Control Limitations.....	59	Reverse Wipe Settings.....	87
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	121	What Is Reverse Wipe.....	87
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Diesel.....	120	Rollover Warning.....	541
Remote Start Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	120	Roof Rack.....	352
Remote Start Limitations - Diesel.....	120	Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	353
Remote Start.....	120	Roof Rack Precautions.....	352
Remote Start Settings.....	121	Route Guidance.....	528
Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	59	Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	528
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage.....	447	Canceling Route Guidance.....	528
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	445	Repeating an Instruction.....	528
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	568	Running-In See: Breaking-In.....	364
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	62	Running Out of Fuel.....	190
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	138	Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	191
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	88	Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	190
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades - Vehicles With: Rear Window Wiper and Washer.....	88		

S

Scrolling Through Menu Items.....	513
Seatbelt Precautions.....	48

Index

Seatbelt Reminder.....	49	Setting a Destination.....	527
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	49	Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	528
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	49	Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	527
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	49	Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	527
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	49	Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	528
Seatbelts.....	48	Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	527
Seatbelt Reminder.....	49	Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	527
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	50	Setting a Memory Preset.....	512
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	50	Settings Data.....	26
Seatbelts – Information Messages.....	50	Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap – Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	290
Security.....	79	Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap – Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	289
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	79	Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed – Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	289
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	80	Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed – Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	288
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	79	Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	123
Security – Troubleshooting.....	81	Setting the Clock and Date.....	513
Security – Troubleshooting.....	81	Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	282
Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	82	Setting the High Voltage Battery Reserve Limit.....	159
Security – Information Messages.....	81	Setting the Speed Limit.....	307
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	301	Setting the Temperature.....	123
Selecting a Menu Item.....	513	Setting the Wake Word.....	517
Selecting the Audio Source.....	512	Shifting Into Reverse.....	239
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption.....	202	Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) – 10-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	244
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines.....	199	Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) – 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	243
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions.....	199	Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear – 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	242
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements.....	199		
Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....	199		
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank.....	200		
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....	203		
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....	203		
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	205		
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages.....	203		
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps.....	203		
Service Data.....	25		
Service Intervals.....	540		

Index

Side Parking Aid.....	270	Starter Switch	
Locating the Side Parking Aid		See: Ignition Switch.....	169
Sensors.....	271	Starting and Powering Off	
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	271	Precautions.....	180
Side Parking Aid Limitations.....	270	Starting and Powering Off.....	180
What is the Side Parking Aid.....	270	Starting and Powering Off –	
Signing In as a Driver.....	530	Troubleshooting.....	182
Signing In to Your Account.....	518	Vehicle Power Down Timer - Vehicles With:	
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	140	Push Button Start.....	181
Sliding Door Precautions.....	70	Starting and Powering Off –	
Sliding Door.....	70	Troubleshooting.....	182
Closing the Sliding Door.....	71	Starting and Powering Off – Frequently	
Opening the Sliding Door.....	70	Asked Questions.....	182
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting.....	75	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting.....	75	Precautions.....	169
Sliding Door – Frequently Asked		Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	169
Questions.....	76	Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With:	
Sliding Door – Information Messages.....	75	Push Button Start.....	175
Software Update Indicators.....	532	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Software Update Settings.....	531	Troubleshooting.....	176
Software Update		Starting the Engine.....	170
See: Software Update Settings.....	531	Stopping the Engine.....	173
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	531	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Special Notices - Turkey.....	20	Troubleshooting.....	176
Speed Control		Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
See: Cruise Control.....	282	Frequently Asked Questions.....	178
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	308	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Speed Limiter Indicators.....	308	Information Messages.....	177
Speed Limiter Precautions.....	307	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Speed Limiter.....	307	Warning Lamps.....	176
Speedometer.....	108	Starting the Engine.....	170
Speed Sign Recognition		Restarting the Engine After Stopping	
Indicators.....	343	It.....	172
Speed Sign Recognition		Starting a Diesel Engine.....	170
Limitations.....	343	Starting a Flooded Engine.....	172
Speed Sign Recognition		Starting the Vehicle.....	180
Precautions.....	343	Status Bar.....	515
Speed Sign Recognition Settings.....	344	Steering Wheel.....	84
Speed Sign Recognition.....	343	Stopping the Engine.....	183
Speed Sign Recognition –		Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Troubleshooting.....	344	Moving.....	174
Speed Sign Recognition –		Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Troubleshooting.....	344	Stationary.....	173
Speed Sign Recognition – Information		Stopping the Sliding Door	
Messages.....	344	Movement.....	74
Stability Control Indicator.....	267	Storage.....	166
Stability Control.....	267	Bottle Holders.....	166
		Cup Holders.....	166

Index

Front Door Storage.....	167	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	
Overhead Storage.....	166	- Vehicles With: Heated	
Rear Overhead Storage.....	168	Windshield.....	127
Under Seat Storage.....	167	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	
Storing a First Aid Kit.....	384	- Vehicles Without: Heated Rear	
Storing a Warning Triangle.....	384	Window.....	122
Storing Your Vehicle.....	446	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On		- Vehicles Without: Heated	
and Off.....	287	Windshield.....	126
Switching Air Conditioning On and		Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	268
Off.....	126	Switching Recirculated Air On and	
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On		Off.....	122
and Off - Bus/Van.....	98	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and	
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On		Off.....	260
and Off - Bus.....	98	Switching Stability Control On and	
Switching Android Auto On and		Off.....	267
Off.....	526	Switching Text Message Notification On	
Switching Apple CarPlay On and		and Off.....	523
Off.....	525	Switching the 360 Degree Camera On	
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	264	and Off.....	279
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and		Switching the 360 Degree Camera	
Off.....	183	View.....	279
Switching Blind Spot Information		Switching the Audio Unit On and	
System On and Off.....	322	Off.....	512
Switching Climate Control On and		Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and	
Off.....	122	Off.....	133
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and		Switching the Display On and Off.....	514
Off.....	332	Switching the Electric Heater On and Off	
Switching Cruise Control On and		- Battery Electric Vehicle.....	127
Off.....	282	Switching the Front Interior Lamps On	
Switching Defrost On and Off.....	122	and Off.....	98
Switching Delivery Assist On and		Switching the Hazard Flashers On and	
Off.....	280	Off.....	370
Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	345	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off	
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and		- Vehicles With: Heated Rear	
Off.....	304	Window.....	123
Switching Exit Warning On and		Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off	
Off.....	329	- Vehicles Without: Heated Rear	
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control		Window.....	123
to Cruise Control.....	292	Switching the Heated Rear Window On	
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter		and Off.....	123
to Speed Limiter.....	311	Switching the Heated Steering Wheel	
Switching Maximum Cooling On and		On and Off.....	85
Off.....	127	Switching the Heated Windshield On	
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off		and Off.....	127
- Vehicles With: Heated Rear		Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter	
Window.....	122	On and Off.....	309

Index

Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	313
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	313
Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control.....	135
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....	53
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus.....	98
Switching the Rear Power Outlet On and Off.....	158
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off - Vehicles With: Rear Window Wiper and Washer.....	87
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off.....	307
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	266
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off.....	350
System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	531
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	531
T	
Tachometer - Diesel.....	107
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	492
Temporary Neutral Mode - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	247
Entering Temporary Neutral Mode.....	248
Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode.....	248
How Does Temporary Neutral Mode Work.....	247
Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations.....	247
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	541
Tire Care.....	457
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	472
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	472
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	472
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	473
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	473
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Information Messages.....	474
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Warning Lamps.....	473
Tire Pressure Specifications - Bus.....	464
Tire Pressure Specifications.....	457
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	452
Tire Rotation.....	465
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components.....	467
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions.....	467
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	467
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	357
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	356
Towing a Trailer.....	356
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	358
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	358
Tow Bar Dimensions.....	359
Towing Weight Capacities.....	358
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	381
Towing Your Vehicle.....	381
Traction Control Indicator.....	266
Traction Control.....	266
Traction Control - Troubleshooting.....	266
Traction Control - Troubleshooting.....	266
Traction Control - Information Messages.....	266
Traction Control - Warning Lamps.....	266
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators.....	348
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations.....	347
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions.....	347
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings.....	349
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	347
Traffic Sign Recognition - Troubleshooting.....	349

Index

Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....	349
Traffic Sign Recognition – Information Messages.....	349
Trailer Lighting Check.....	355
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	363
Trailer Sway Control.....	363
Trailer Towing Hints.....	358
Trailer Towing Navigation.....	528
Transporting the Vehicle.....	378
Trip Computer.....	119
Trip Data.....	119
Trip Summary.....	117
How Does Trip Summary Work.....	304
Viewing the Trip Summary.....	304
Tyre Pressure Specifications	
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications.....	457
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications – Bus.....	464

U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	385
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	385
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	386
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	408
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, AWD/ RWD/LHD.....	404
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, AWD/ RWD/RHD.....	406
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, FWD/ LHD.....	405
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, FWD/ RHD.....	407
Under Seat Storage.....	167
Locating the Under Seat Storage Compartment.....	167
USB Ports.....	155
Using Alexa Built-In.....	518
Using Auto Hold.....	264
Using Keyless Entry.....	77
Using Progressive Range Selection - 10-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	246
Using Snow Chains.....	453
Using Summer Tires.....	453
Using the Cigar Lighter.....	165

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....	115
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	468
Using This Publication.....	20
Using Winter Tires.....	453
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging.....	235

V

Vehicle Care.....	441
Cleaning the Exterior.....	441
Cleaning the Interior.....	443
Vehicle Charging Status - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	117
Vehicle Dimensions - Bus/Kombi/ Van.....	493
Vehicle Dimensions - Chassis Cab/ Chassis Double Cab.....	494
Vehicle Identification Number.....	505
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	505
Vehicle Identification Number Overview.....	505
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	505
Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate.....	505
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....	506
Vehicle Identification.....	505
Vehicle Identification Number.....	505
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	505
Vehicle Power Down Timer - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	181
How Does the Vehicle Power Down Timer Work.....	181
Overriding the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	181
Switching the Vehicle Power Down Timer On and Off.....	181
What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	181
Vehicle Range Display - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	108
Vehicle Software Updates.....	531
Vehicle System Reset.....	533

Index

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	511
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....	511
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	510
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	511
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	122
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	126
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level.....	303
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	472
Viewing the Trip Summary.....	303
Visual Search.....	29
Voice Interaction Examples.....	517
Voice Interaction.....	517
W	
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication.....	20
Washer Fluid Specification.....	500
Washers.....	89
Adding Washer Fluid.....	89
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	89
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	89
Using the Windshield Washer.....	89
Washer Precautions.....	89
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	86
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	445
Waypoints.....	528
Adding a Waypoint.....	528
Editing Waypoints.....	528
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	112
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	110
What Is a Connected Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	507
What Is a Connected Vehicle - Diesel.....	507
What is Alexa Built-In.....	518
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	183
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	321
What Is Cross Traffic Alert - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System Kit.....	331
What Is Cross Traffic Alert - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System.....	331
What Is Cruise Control.....	282
What is Delivery Assist?.....	280
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	301
What Is Driver Alert.....	345
What Is Eco Coach.....	303
What Is Efficient Drive Mode.....	304
What Is Emergency Assistance.....	56
What is Exit Warning.....	328
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	263
What Is Keyless Entry.....	77
What Is Local Hazard Information.....	306
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	336
What Is Remote Start.....	120
What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	259
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....	343
What Is Stability Control.....	267
What Is the 360 Degree Camera.....	277
What Is the Auxiliary Heater.....	133
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	138
What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter.....	195
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	256
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	206
What Is the Information Bar.....	110
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	309
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	312
What Is the Parking Heater.....	134
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....	55
What Is the Power Outlet.....	157
What Is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	152
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	274
What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....	199
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	472
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	467

Index

What Is Traction Control.....	266
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....	347
What Is Voice Interaction.....	517
What Is Wrong Way Alert.....	350
Wheel and Tire Information.....	448
Wheel Nuts.....	491
Wi-Fi	
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	510
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	508
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	510
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	510
Window Bounce-Back.....	100
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	100
Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....	101
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	100
Windows.....	100
Window Bounce-Back.....	100
Wipers and Washers –	
Troubleshooting.....	90
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	90
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	90
Wipers and Washers.....	86
Autowipers - Vehicles With:	
Autowipers.....	86
Reverse Wipe - Vehicles With: Rear Window Wiper and Washer.....	87
Washers.....	89
Wipers.....	86
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	90
Wipers.....	86
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	86
Wiper Precautions.....	86
Wrong Way Alert Limitations.....	350
Wrong Way Alert Precautions.....	350
Wrong Way Alert –	
Troubleshooting.....	351
Wrong Way Alert – Information Messages.....	351
Wrong Way Alert.....	350
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	351

Y

Your Authorized Dealer.....	534

